THE
Schoole of Horſmanship.

VVherein is diſcouered vvhat skill and knowledge is required in a good Horſeman, practiſed by perfect experience. And alſo how to reforme anie reſtie horſe, of what nature and diſpoſition ſo euer. Briefely touching the knowledge of the Breeder, Sadler, Smith, and the Horſeleach.

WITH A STRANGE AND rare inuention how to make a new kinde of racke, and how to teach a Horſe to lie vpon his bellie vntill the Rider take his backe.

By Chriſt. Clifford, Gent.

¶Imprinted at London for Thomas Cadman, and are to be ſolde at his ſhop in Paules Churchyard, at the ſigne of the Bible.
1585.

[illegible] that will [illegible]

TO THE RIGHT VVorshipfull, Sir Philip Sidney, Knight.

SIR, I haue written of late, not by reading, but on mine owne experience, a conference and discourse about the training of horses, and curing of their diseases, wherin albeit I dare professe to teach a readier & better waie in training horse for seruice & trauaile, than hath bene either yet set downe of anie, or put in practise by the delicate professors of this Art, yet my intention was not further then to serue the priuate vse of my priuate friends, till at the last I offered it to the cēsure of a certain honorable Gentleman, whose singular good iudgement & great experience in this matter I haue euer esteemed aboue al others, who liked so wel of this my labour, that he not onlie thought good it should be printed for the common vse and profit of our Country, but also vouchsaft by setting of his hand to testifie the same. Whervpon I haue consented to the printing of it, & so haue made it come to light vnder the good protection and countenance of your W. both because of your great knowledge and experience in Horsemanshippe, and in all other vertues, whereby ye draw to you the harts of euerie one that knowes you, and also for your speciall curtesie shewed vnto me: & therfore I haue thus far presumed, til occasiō of further seruice may occur to present you with other flowers or fruits of my experience, which is the onely compas, rule, and square of this discourse. Humbile requesting that yee excuse or pardon the homelie

[illegible] to the most
William Sam John [illegible]

ſtile and tenor of this conference, either becauſe that true experiẽce do need no ornament of words, or other waies becauſe I am vnlettered & haue not Rethoricke at commaundement. Which if it pleaſe you to accept after the ordinarie of your countenance, I meane to enter further in other new and rare Ingins for warre, all of my owne inuention and experience. And thus I end, beſeeching God to bleſſe your life with all increaſe of Honour.

Your moſt humble to commaund,

Chriſtopher Clifford.

To the Reader.

GEntle Reader, thou shalt find many things in this worke placed out of order, for that I haue lacked time and am vnlettered, neither haue bene able to kéepe anie seruant whom I might commaund to write when I would, which hath bene the cause that I haue left out many notable things in this worke, which thou shalt haue héereafter, God sparing me life & abilitie therevnto. Perhappes some curious riders may finde fault with my homelie kinde of teaching, for ẏ I set not down how they shuld teach their horses to coruet, nor how to torment thē vainlie with a chain or cauisō, which is one of the principal causes that they make their horses restie runawaies, and hard mouthed, but my intent is not to teach anie of them which make their horses more fit to daunce on a carpet, then for anie other kinde of seruice, but onelie to teach those, whose noble mindes delights in armes, and to haue their horses made for seruice and trauaile, which is the thing wherevnto God hath ordained that beast. Clifford take héede what you doe, will you speake against the chaine and coruetting of horses? Mée thinke that shewes in you small skill in riding, sith they are both vsed throughout all Christendome. I know that this shall be the obiection of those, that either knowes not the difference betwéen the snaffle & the chaine, or else ẏ will know it for no other cause, but that they wil after an obstinate manner maintaine it to be good, because they would differ from others in order of riding, and the reason why it is naught, is, that being once buckled to the horses head, as they vsuallie doe, or drawne close, it doeth grieue the horse continuallie, as well when he doth well as when he doth erre, in such sort, that the horse not vnderstanding the cause of his néedlesse griefe, falleth into a number of disorders. And ẏ first reason why it is naught to teach a horse to coruet, is, because it doth greatlie wea-

ken

ken his backe and loines. The ſecond, it is a moſt cruell torment to a man in armes, for that a number of iades being giuen to coquet by nature, & vſed thereunto, will manie times fall a coquetting when his rider woulde not haue him: and the third and laſt reaſon why it is naught, is, for that when you would encounter your enimie at hand ſtrokes with your ſworde, theſe miſtaught iades wil fall a dancing, which is a thing verie dangerous, in fighting with one horſe againſt another, for ỹ he neuer ſtandeth ſurelie, and therfore is in perill to be throwen downe or elſe to giue the riders backe to the enimie, which is no leſſe daunger than his life is worth: but gentle Reader, I haue not ſpoken this either of enuie or mallice againſt anie perticular perſon, for I proteſt before God and the world, that I haue euer bene of that opinion, that hee is vnworthie of credit either in armes or common wealth, that is not ſo voide of enuie and mallice, that he ſhal take a thouſand times more delight in pardoning of his enimies, than to be reuenged of them, and for proofe hereof, I doe not onelie giue free leaue to all you to amend what ſo euer you find amiſſe in my worke without anie reſpect of me, but onelie in reſpect to profit this our Countrie, & alſo that you do reproue me either by your gentle admonitions, or by your letters, of all ſuch thinges as you ſhall finde by your owne experience to be amiſſe, and I will aſſure you that I ſhal receiue it thankfully at your handes.

Thus leauing to trouble thee anie longer (gentle Reader) vntill better opportunitie be offered mee to accompliſh my promiſe aboue ſaid, I bid thee moſt hartely farewell.

C. Clifford.

Sir Iohn Tracie Knight,

in commendation of this Booke.

IF Xenophon deserude immortall fame,
Or Grysons glorie from earth to skie did reach,
If Carociolus gainde a worthie princely name,
Whose Bookes the Art of Horsemanship doe teach:
Then Cliffords praise what pen or tongue can tell,
Whose paines herein, their works doth farre excell.

For who delight in gallant steeds doth take,
To gallop them, or how coruet they must,
Or he that seekes the fiercest colt to make,
In braueſt sort, to stop, and manage iust,
By this thy Booke shall gaine his whole intent,
Adornde with Art and Skill most excellent.

His rare conceits in this his Booke he showes
How stubborne Iades reformed ought to be:
And all diseases, which by experience he knowes
How them to cure, you may both learne and see:
The Sadler, and the Smith of thee may find their skil,
So in their Art thou dost reforme their ill.

What honors then to Martiall mindes are due,
What recompence is made for worthie paines,
What thankes or gifts do Vertue still ensue,
And what rewards both Art and Skill obtaines,
The fame to thee for this thy good desart,
Both strangers, friends, and countrie will impart.

Iohn Tracie Knight.

The contents of this Booke.

AL the principall points belonging to a good horſman, moſt plainly taught, according to my true experience, which I haue wel approoued and tried by the ſpace of 30. years, that is to ſaie, of the Breeder, the Rider, Keeper, and the Sadler, of the Horſeleach and Smith. Where, in the beginning you ſhall finde certaine briefe notes neceſſarie to be obſerued of the Breeder. In the firſt Booke you ſhal find the Art of Riding, with a treatiſe how to vſe your hand vpon the bridle and cauiſon, ſo plainly taught, that it is not poſsible for anie man of reaſon that is willing to learne this Art, but that he may make any horſe readie, of what nature or diſpoſition ſoeuer he be, and after an easier maner than hath beene heretofore taught by any man. The ſecond Booke ſheweth to reforme al kinds of reſtie horſes, or hard mouthed runawaies, both eaſly and plainely. The third Booke intreateth of the Kepers office, how to make your ſtable with a ſtanding rack, that there may no duſt fall, neither on the horſes mane, nor on his head, a moſt rare inuention: Alſo it teacheth you how to diet your horſe, both when you trauell and exerciſe him: And how to maiſter all thoſe horſes that will bite their Kepers, or leape on them with their forefeet, at ſuch time as they leade them in their hands, or that the Rider would take their backes. The fourth Booke intreateth of the Sadlers office, how he ſhould make his ſaddle, and what kinde of ſaddle is beſt, both for ſeruice and trauell: And alſo how euerie ſouldior may carrie both his headpeece, and piſtoll, in ſuch ſort as it ſhall not trouble him any more than if he had nothing at al at his ſaddle: Alſo it teacheth how to make your headſtall, to ſerue in ſteede of a collar, when you trauell anie iourney, or that you are in ſeruice, a thing verie neceſſarie to be learned of al ſouldiers: It teacheth you alſo how to make your cauiſon, curb, & diuers other neceſſarie inuentions very needful to be vſed of the Rider. The fift Booke teacheth how to cure your horſe of ſo many diſeaſes as I haue in al my life had experience of. The ſixt and laſt Booke ſheweth howe you ſhould ſhooe your horſe: and how to make that horſe that hath euil feet, to haue good hooſes in very ſhort ſpace.

Cliffords experience and opinion of breeding of Coltes, and

what Stalians and Mares are best to breed vp-
on, and also what ground is best
to breed an horse in.

Of the Stalian.

The Stalian woulde be large of bodie, for that we see moste commonly the Coltes to followe the Stalian in bignes, although they be begotten of little Mares, or of Mares a great deale lesse than the Stalian. Let him also be of good colour, of good courage, wel made: and aboue all things, see he be sound, and well marked, and that he be gentle, and of an approued durablenesse in trauel: and as touching his colour, there is none euill that hath all his outward partes blacke, that is to say, his legges, taile, and mane, tippes of eares, and his mouzel: nor none good that hath all his bodie of one colour, saue the blacke and white: but the blacke is the best of the two colours last named. And aboue al things see he haue good hoofes, that is to say, that they be litle, and round, and hollow: for broade footed, long footed, and narrow heeled iades are nothing worth when they come to seruice or trauel: for in seruice the broade foote will neuer keepe a shoo long, and in trauel they will all be lame. But if your mare haue very good hoofs, then the Stalian with euill hoofes shall be more tolerable: And as touching his age, the yonger and lustier he is, the better: for I haue seene an horse of foure yeeres of age get so good a colt, as an horse that was eight yeares of age. I haue also ridden on an horse of the Marshall Byrones, begotten

begotten of a Turkish Stalian that was 24. yeres of age, and I neuer found in all my life a better horse both for trauel and seruice.

As touching your mares that you mind to breed vpō, the larger they are, the better: but if you chaunce to haue any yong mares that you mind to breed vpon, take heed that you first make them to be ridde and handled the 3. yeare, and that you put not them to the horse til they be 4. yeres of age, and it shal be good to handle them gently, and to let them haue daily exercise in some moderate trauel, for if you let them stand long stil, you shal greatly weaken their bodies, and by sodaine & extreme trauelling of them after long rest, shal fil them ful of diseases, so as they shall be verie vnprofitable for a race: for it is not possible to breed sound colts, vpō vnsound mares and Stalians. Let them also be of good shape & colour: but the shape is much more to be taken heed of, than the colour, for that it is much holpen by the Stalian, & when you would put them to the horse, the best way is, in my iudgement, to let thē run togither at gralle for the space of a month at the least. And see that your mares haue no shoes on their hinder feet, for feare of hurting your Stalian, and let not your Stalian be to fat, and he would also be trauelled a iourney before you turne him out, to the end that he may be wearie, so shall he not ouer-heat himself at the first: and the best time of the daie to turne him out, is, in the morning fasting verie early before the heate of the daie, & afterward, when he hath heated himselfe, the warmnes of the Sun shal come, by meanes whereof he shall not take any cold: if he driue him selfe into any heat, it shal be good to cause a boy to folow him vp and downe, so as he may not rest till he be throughly colde. It shall not be amisse before that you turne your mares and Stalian togither, to trie whether they will stand still or not to the horse, by offering them some other nag or stoned iade, and if you see they stand stil, the

are

are they not in hoʒsing: yet haue I ſéene ſome iades, being mad on hoʒsing that would ſtrike the Stalian, and yet after they had béene a little wearie, would ſtand ſtill inough. But if you haue moʒe ſuch conuenient ground, than may you let your Stalian ſerue your mares, either in the hand, oʒ elſe in ſome large barne oʒ cloſe court. But you muſt put them togither earely in the moʒning, and late at night, and ſée ỹ your Stalian be not too ful foʒ feare of hurting himſelf, & let him be well pʒouendʒed.

How to weane your Colts.

PUt them ſo farre from your mares as they cannot one heare another, into ſome warme groũd, wher there is good ſtoʒe of long and ſwéet graſſe, and til they be two yeares of age it ſhall be good to féede them all the winter with fine haie abʒoad: foʒ by kéeping your coltes at houſe in the winter, you ſhall marre them foʒ lacke of exerciſe. Foʒ there is not anie one thing moʒe enimie to health both foʒ man and beaſt, whether he be yong oʒ olde, than the lacke of ſuch exerciſe as ſhall be moſt agréeing with the qualitie of his age and ſtrength. But if it be in ſuch part of England, as the ſnowe lieth vpon the grounde a moneth oʒ ſixe wéekes togither, it ſhal not be amiſſe to take thẽ into the houſe al the night to let them eate: but in the daie time I would haue you turne them abʒoad, euen from moʒning till night, but it were much better to make a houſe in the field, and place a double racke in the middle thereof: but ſée that you paue ſuch on houſe, oʒ grauell it: foʒ if you plancke it, it ſhall be verie dangerous foʒ marring your colts, by ſlyding thereon: and if you paue it not, it ſhall be al myʒie, which is verie naught foʒ your colts hoofs and legs, foʒ the dʒier that they go, & the harder that the ground is, the ſounder ſhall your hoʒſe be. It ſhall be good alſo the firſt Summer that your colts be weined, that is to ſay, when they are a yeare olde and the vantage, that if you ſhal perceiue by going in good paſture ỹ they ſhal wax

verie fat, then it shall not be amisse to eate the pasture shorter with more cattell, or else to put them in suche ground as they may trauel somthing more to fil their bellies. This order shal you obserue the first two yeers, but the third yeare it shall be good to put them in some such high ground and short pasture, that they may trauel almost the whole daie before they fill their bellies, and take heede that they haue trees or hedges to shadow them in in the heate of the daie, and also to defend them from the cold in winter: and when you perceiue them somethyng pinched with the cold, you may giue them straw & chaffe to eate vntill it be the beginning of March at the least, then it shal be good to take them into the house for the space of a moneth, or six weeks, & giue them straw to eate, & chaffe, with a verie litle prouẽder in it. But if you haue no chaffe, thẽ it shal be good to giue thẽ two parts of chopt straw, & but one part of oats, & whẽ you haue made them gẽtle to be dressed, it shalbe good to leade them to the water, first with a double cloth girded with a surcingle, & after that they will go gently, you may saddle them, and leade them to the water, with the stirroppes lose, beating against their sides, but take heed ẏ al the while they stand in the stable, you lay litter inough vnder thẽ for feare of sliding: & after you haue made them gentle to go with the saddle, it shall be good to turne them abroad euery day when it is drie weather at 9. of the clock til 3. at afternoone into some field or large court nigh to the stable. If at any time after they are throughly acquainted with the stable, they come not home of thẽselues, fetch thẽ not til through hunger they be glad to come. By this meanes you shal defend your horses when they are yong from sickenesse and diseases, through exercising themselues on this wise, so as when they come to trauel, they shall be sound & durable horses: By this ẏ I haue said, I would haue said, that til your coltes be 2. yeares of age, you neither let them suffer hunger nor cold, but that you

ſo nouriſh thē as you ſée good bréeders nouriſh their weaning calues, & the 3. & 4. Summer & winter, let thē fare somewhat harder than they did the 2. firſt yeres, & the 3. winter I wold haue you offer thē no hard meat, til they be glad to eat ſtraw & chaffe, & that you giue thē no other thing ý yere nor ý 4. winter neither, til ſuch time as you take thē vp: but it ſhall be good the 4. winter to exerciſe them ſadled with a pole or long ſtaffe, without anie man on his back, as ſhall be hereafter more plainly taught.

At what age it is beſt to take vp a colt to ride him, & at what time of the yeere I may take vp my horſe to haue him moſt gentle, and alſo to make him a good ſtable horſe, and to eate his hard meate well.

Clifford.

I Would not haue you to backe anie horſe vntill he be 4. yéeres of age & eight moneths at the leaſt, by ý that I haue told, I would haue told you that it is not good to take vp anie horſe to ride, til he be ouer 4. yeres of age ſo far into the 5. Winter, ý he hath ben glad to eat ſtraw and chaffe the ſpace of one moneth at the leaſt abroad before you take him vp into the houſe, & alſo ý you perceiue him ſome thing to loſe his fleſh. And you ſhall not haue made this horſe thus bred & of this age, when he comes to fiue yeares of age, not onelie ſo readie as if you had taken him vp at thrée & the vantage, or at foure, but alſo he ſhall be worth when you haue néed 15. of thoſe horſes that you ſhall backe at the former age.

Kingdon.

If I let mine horſe be almoſt 5. yeares of age before I back him, he ſhall become ſo ſtrong & ſtubburn as no mā ſhall bee able to handle him, & alſo if I let him go abroad till he be glad to féed vpon ſtrawe & chaffe, he ſhall become leane, therefore I would thinke it much better to take vp mine horſe in the beginning of Winter before he loſe his fleſh.

Clifford.

Where thou ſaiſt thy horſe will become ſtubburne,

thou art deceiued, for by trotting him ſadled with a long pole the third and fourth winter, euerie ſecond daie, ſo long as he ſhall ſtand in the ſtable, in ſuch order as ſhal be hereafter taught, thou ſhalt make him ſo gentle as thou wouldeſt wiſh: & thou ſaieſt he ſhall become leane, and that thou thinkeſt it better to take him vp at the beginning of winter, this is a dreame me thinkes indeed of an vnſkilfull man, but I wil not feed thee with vaine things, but with experience grounded vpon reaſon: for if thou take vp thy horſe in the beginning of winter, before he haue taſted of anie hardneſſe, thou ſhalt neuer make him a good ſtable horſe, for whiles the graſſe is better then haie, it is not poſſible that he ſhould eat haie well, but after the ſubſtance of the graſſe is gone, ſo that it nouriſhes ſo little as good ſtrawe or chaffe, & that the horſe will feed therevpon verie well, then it is time to take him vp & not before, for there is no other reaſon to be found why our horſes ſhuld not eate ſtraw, but that we take them vp while they are ſo greaſie fat & idle by feeding them in deep paſturs where they may fill their bellies in two or three houres feeding, whereas in deed it were a great deale better after they be two yeres of age to let them go in ſuch paſture, as they muſt trauaile almoſt halfe the daie before they can fill their bellies. And whereas thou ſaieſt they ſhall become leane, I warrant thee they ſhall become neuer a whit the worſe therfore, for although thou ride him euerie ſecond daie gentlie, ſo that he ſweat not, thou ſhalt within one moneth after he comes to the houſe, by feeding him with good ſtraw and reaſonable ſtore of prouender haue fullie recouered the former loſſe, which ſhal redound to thy double gain, for that he ſhall euer after be a good ſtable horſe, that if he lacke meate at anie time, ye ſhall ſee him eate his litter with greater appetite than our daintie dieted iades bred as we vſuallie doe here in England, ſhall eate the beſt haie that you can giue them.

The

The first Chapter of this Booke, of the Schoole of Horsemanship, treateth how to backe a yong horse, at the first.

Kingdon.

I Pray you teach me in what order I shall saddle, bridle, and backe my horse at the first.

Clifford.

As soone as he is gentle to be dressed, saddle him, and leade him to the water, and so being sadled, with the stirrops beating lose on his sides, and when hee will goe gently therewith, leade him to the Smithes, and shoe him before you doe anie thing with him. That being done, bridle him with a snaffle, brake, or trench, which would not be rough, and also without players, for feare of hurting his mouth. Then may you bring him to a blocke, and offer to take his backe, which if he refuse, then tye a long pole, staffe, or pike, fast to the eies of your brake, which would haue a hole in the end for that purpose, make also a hole in the other ende, in the which you must put a strong peece of cord, for to holde him by. This being done, get thee in some good ground, and let a footeman or two, if need be, set handes in the cord, which you may make fast in the end of the foresaid staffe, which being done, let them stand stil, and let a footman leade the horse close by the head, round about the foresaid two footmen fiue or sixe times, first on the one hand, and then on the other, to the end you may

marke out a ring vnto him, which you may do, by reaſon of the ſtaffe, which will keepe him of a iuſt diſtaunce from your foreſaide two ſwteemen, who muſt alwaies ſtand ſtill without mouing out of their places. That being done, let the ſwteman goe from him, and force him to trot, firſt on the one hand, and then on the other, vntil ſuch time as he will be content to let you take his backe. Then ſhal you take his back if he be foure yeares and a halfe of age, if he be but foure, then ſhall you exerciſe him in this ſorte twice in the weeke, for the ſpace of fiue moneths, without anie man on his backe: with the which exerciſe you ſhall not onelie make your horſe ſtrong, and diſpoſed, but alſo, by raining him on the ſaddle bowe, and by tying two cordes to the buckles of his fore girt, and to the eies of his watring bit or brake, you ſhall make him raine well, and carrie his head readie, and alſo trotte ſo brauely, as though he were ridden: by this meanes you ſhall make your horſe to trot your ring, (your fiue moneths being expired) euen the firſt day that you backe him, ſo perfectly, as though he had beene ridden euerie daie: yea, and he ſhall be ſo well acquainted with this leſſon, that you ſhall ſee him gallop it, both pleaſauntly and brauely, euen of him ſelfe, yea, and by that time your horſe comes to be fiue yeares of age, you ſhall haue made him as readie as though you had begun to ride him at three yeares and the vauntage: and he ſhall be better than three of thoſe which ſhall be marred by riding them too young, for in the world it is not poſſible to finde a better horſe than ours, if they were not marred by riding them too young, of the which thing, I haue had good experience, in a bay horſe, which her Maieſtie gaue to Mounſieur at his being in England, which horſe I haue ſeene march from morning til night, with a man on his backe, with ſuch courage and countenaunce, that all the men of armes (the King of France being

being there) with their Turkie horses, Hungarians, Poles, Frisons, and Flaunders horses, and also with their Coursers, and Jenets, could neuer doe the like: which foresaid horse, I haue seene far to surpasse them all in anie trauaile or exercise ỳ he might be put vnto, which is not onlie my iudgement and opinion, but also I heard all the Captaines and Riders, to affirme the same, and they would oftentimes say vnto me, that we Englishmẽ knew not howe good our horses were: for if we did, we would neuer seeke horses of Spaine and Italie.

Kingdon.

Why shall I thus trot my horse with a pole, rather than with a corde?

Clifford.

Because that hee may hang him selfe by his legges sooner in the cord than in the pole, besides that, you cannot holde him from comming vpon you, nor guide him so right in his rings; yea, I haue diuers times trotted a young horse, in this order without any man on his back, til he hath been so perfect, that at the first backing he hath trotted his ring so orderly, as though he had beene ridden halfe a yeare, by the which meanes I did much strengthen my horse, of the which thing thou must haue a speciall care, if thou wilt be a good horseman, not to decrease his strength, but rather increase the same.

Kingdon.

This by the way, but to the purpose, my horse being foure yeeres of age & a halfe, and I being mounted, what lesson shall I giue him first?

Clifford.

First you shal ride him forth right in some lane, or deep high way, so far as shal be agreeable vnto his strẽgth. And riding him once euerie daie in this sort, so long til he wil let you mount and descend gently, and also take his waie readily, which, when he will do, it shall be

inough to ride him once in two daies, for the ſpace of one moneth.

Kingdon.

Why ſhall I ride my horſe forth right, and not rather in a ring?

Clifford.

For that your horſe being faint and vnacquainted with trauell, your ring turne ſhall be too great a trauel for him at the firſt, and ſhal too too much weaken and diſcourage him, but after you haue exerciſed him as before, hée ſhall be become ſo ſtrong therewith, that his ring turnes wil not be ſo gréeuous vnto him, as they would haue béene at the firſt by the one halfe.

The ſecond Chapter treateth of the horſes leſſons, and at what time of the daie it is beſt to teach him.

Kingdon.

HAuing taught me to make my horſe gentle, I woulde alſo haue you teach me at what time of the daie it is beſt to ride him, and alſo what leſſons he hath to learne.

Clifford.

As touching thy firſt demaund, I aunſwere, that it is beſt to teach him in the morning before he drinke or eate his prouender, by meanes whereof, you ſhall auoid the danger of ſtraining his winde, or filmebreaking him. And alſo, for that you may haue leaſure ynough before bed time to drie and dreſſe him. And as touching your ſecond demaund, you ſhall firſt teach your horſe to tread the great ring, both vppon paſe and trotte: and ſée as well in doing the ſame, as all other his leſſons, that you

you make him raine wel, carrie his head ſteadie, and goe vpright in his turning: Secondarily, you ſhall teache your horſe to ſtoppe and go backe: Thirdly, to aduance: Fourthly, to gallop the great ring, or field gallop: Fiftly, to turne readily on both handes: Sixtly, to make a ſure and perfect manage: Seauenthly, and laſtly, you ſhall learne him to take his gallop and caréer readilie.

Of trotting the great ring, and what order is to be obſerued therein.

Kingdon.

SIthence you haue taught mée howe to make my horſe gentle, it ſhal not be amiſſe to teach me what order I ſhall obſerue in learning him to tread the great ring, for that I haue often times heard you ſaie, that by treading the great ring vpon his paſe, trot and gallop, and by obſeruing good order, time, and meaſure therein, that it is not onelie ſufficient to make him raine well, trot well, carrie his head ſteadie, and to beare light, but that the whole making of your horſe depends vpon the orderly vſing of him, in this foreſaide leſſon.

Clifford.

As touching the order to be obſerued therein, you ſhall enter firſt vppon a ſofte paſe, giuing him eight or tenne turnes, on your right hand, and as manie on the left: you ſhall chaunge in this order from hand to hand, till you haue giuen him ſo many turnes, as ſhall be agréeable to his ſtrength, which being done, ride him forth right thirtie or fortie paces, where you muſt ſtop him by ſtrayning your bridle hand, and by ſpeaking vnto him gently with a ſoft voice, ſaying, hallow boy, hallow: loking that he ſtand right in his path or furrowe, which woulde be made for that purpoſe, in ſome

hanging or falling ground. Hauing thus ſtopped your horſe, let him ſtand ſtil a preatie whyle, at which time you muſt flatter and ſcratch him in and vnder his maine. It ſhall be good alſo to giue him a little graſſe to eate, to light from his backe, and leade him home, doing no more with him that daie. Hauing thus acquainted your horſe throughly with this leſſon vpon his pale, then ſhall you offer him to trot the ſame by helping him with your voice and calues of legs onelie.

Kingdon.

But what if he will not goe with the helpe of my voice and calues of my legges.

Clifford.

Then it is too ſoone to trot him, for I woulde not aduiſe you to offer him his trot in anie caſe, nor yet from his trot to his gallop, before he do it willingly, with the leaſt helpe that may be, without force or compulſion.

Kingdon.

What number of turnes ſhall I giue him vpon his trot, and alſo were it not good to giue him a plaine cannon and cauiſon? I pray you tell me.

Clifford.

Vnles his mouth be verie good, & you your ſelf as good as euer Gryſon was, or Xenophon, I would not counſell thée in anie caſe to vſe anie other thing to teach him vpon, than a trench, brake, or ſnafle, till ſuch time as he be a perfect readie horſe, and as touching the number of thy turnes, that I muſt referre to thine owne iudgement, who ſhall knowe beſt thy horſes ſtrength.

Hovv to learne your horſe to go backe.

Chap. 3.

Clifford.

Clifford.

AFter your horſe can ſtoppe and keepe his furrow or path iuſt, you ſhal learne him to goe backe, by ſtraining your bridle hand, and by ſpeaking vnto him, firſt with a ſoft voice, back, back: and if need be, you may helpe him with the point of your rod vpon his knees, but if he will not goe backe with all theſe helpes, then you muſt vſe a ſoteman, with a cudgell in his hand, who ſtanding right before him, and threatning him, muſt alſo correct him on his fore legges, if nede be.

Kingdon.

How often ſhall I vſe my horſe in this order?

Clifford.

Until he do it both lightly and readily, and faile not, that at euerie time you ſtop him, to make him go backe fiue or ſix paſes at the leaſt, ſo withall, that you vſe it not halfe ſo much to an horſe of a good mouth, as to him that is hard mouthed.

Kingdon.

After my horſe can tread his rings, both vpon paſe and trot, and can both ſtop and go backe: then I pray you teache mee which is the beſt way to make him aduance, that I may not diſtemper his mouth, nor diſorder him.

Clifford.

The beſt way that euer I found to make an horſe aduaunce is this here following. After you haue put a caueſon on his head, turne him about in his rome, and make the two cordes thereof faſt to the two poſtes, then offer him to aduaunce by ſtriking him on the breaſt with a ſharpe rodde, and by ſpeaking vnto him with a cheerefull voice, ſaying, vp, vp boy, vp, which voice you muſt vſe alwaies when you woulde haue your horſe aduance: and likewiſe when you would haue

him

him goe backe, alwaies vſe this woꝛd: backe, backe, not altring your voice: and when you would haue him turne, to ſpeake vnto him with a cheereſull voice, ſaying: turne boy, turne: yea, and though he lift vp but one of his feet, and offer, as though he would lift the other, flatter him, and make much of him, and giue him a litle graſſe oꝛ pꝛouender to eate, which being done, you may offer him his leſſon againe by ſpeaking vnto him as beſoꝛe, and touching him with the rod a little at the firſt, noting, that when you haue gotten him to lift his feete both together, that you flatter and feede him as beſoꝛe, and do no moꝛe with him in one half houre at the leaſt: in this oꝛder you ſhall moſt eaſily teach your hoꝛſe to aduaunce.

Kingdon.

Yea, but this is in the ſtable without a man on his backe, and theꝛefoꝛe when he comes without, he wil be as farre to ſeeke as euer he was.

Clifford.

Canſt thou not remember him in ſome deep way with thy voice, and alſo by helping him with the calues of thy legs, and ſtrike him with thy ſtirrops vpon the points of his ſhoulders, and with thy rod vpon the right ſhoulder if neede require, and if he will not foꝛ all theſe, then vſe a ſwteman ſtanding beſoꝛe him, as thou haſt beene taught beſoꝛe, and when he ſhall heare and ſee the rodde comming towards his breaſt, he ſhall aduaunce without anie beating at all.

Kingdon.

But I haue founde ſome hoꝛſes ſo ſtubboꝛne, that they would not aduance, neither foꝛ ſpurre, noꝛ rod, noꝛ hand, neither foꝛ ſwteman noꝛ rider.

Clifford.

Marke, that when you teach your hoꝛſe any thing in the ſtable, you giue him litter ynough vnder his feete, foꝛ with one daungerous ſlippe oꝛ ſlide, you ſhal vtterly

marꝛs

marre your horse, and although it come by meanes of his foolish keeper, or anie other that shall foolishly beate the horse, causing him to leape and cornet in his roome, yet the rider shall beare the blame. But to the purpose, your horse being tied, as before, in his roome, take a sticke of a yard or an ell long, with a sharpe pricke therin, which must not appeare aboue the length of a wheat corne without the end of the cudgell, and pricke him in the breast therewith, so long, til he offer to lift his feete, which when he doth, make as much of him, as thoughe hee had aduanced, to the end that you may make him vnderstand your mind, with as little correction as is possible, and let him rest one halfe houre at the least: then shal you offer it him againe, as before, which if you find, he doth it but vntowardly, yet make much of him, and let him alone for that daie: for the next morning, his breast being sore, with yesterdaies pricking, you shall see him aduance, euen the first time you offer him the cudgell. In this sort I made an horse of sir Iohn Tracies to aduaunce, which neither he, nor I could do by anie beating possible, nor whipping, vntil such time as I found out this inuention, which is most notable: for, since that time I haue tried it vpon diuers horses. Now, when you are mounted, if the horse refuse to aduance, then let the footeman remember him with the cudgel in some ditch or deepe highway with high bankes on euery side, to holde him in such sort, that he can not start out, nor leape aside. This is a much better waie, than the straining of your hand, beating of your horse vpon the shoulders, or striking him with your spurres, for that to an horse of great courage, it is verie dangerous: for, you may thereby distemper his mouth, or cause him take some euill tache or other, yet I doe not denie, but that it is good to offer your horse to aduance by helping him with the calues of your legges, and with your stir-

hops vpon the points of his ſhoulders, and with the rod on the right ſhoulder.

Howe, and at what time you ſhal learne your horſe to gallop the great ring.

Chap. 4.

Kingdon.

AFter my horſe can do al theſe leſſons before taught, I would haue you to ſhew me in what order, and at what age it is beſt to learne him the field gallop.

Clifford.

Firſt, as touching his age I would not haue you to gallop anie horſe vntill he be fiue yeares olde, and the vantage, no nor vntill he be fiue, if it be poſſible, and as touching the maner that you muſt obſerue in teaching him the ſame, when he can trot his ring perfectly, (as haſt beene before taught:) then may ye offer to gallop him ſometimes, a quarter, or halfe way about the ring, and in his gallop, you ſhall helpe him with your voice, and the calues of your legges, at which time you muſt beare your hand harder, than when you trotted him, to the end, you may make him lift his feete the better, and make him goe vpright in his gallop, which order obſerued, you ſhall moſt eaſely teach your horſe to gallop.

Kingdon.

But in what time may I teach him to gallop in this ſorte?

Clifford.

You ſhall moſt eaſily doe it in the ſpace of two or three moneths.

Kingdon.

Kingdon.

But my horſe will gallop of himſelfe, being perfect in trotting the ring in the ſpace of thirtie daies.

Clifford.

Yea, but if you put your horſe to euery leſſon, as ſoone as he will learne it, you ſhal vtterly ſpoile a young horſe: yea, and you ſhal alſo by that meanes greatly weaken anie olde horſe: you muſt as well in this, as in al other your doings, haue patience, and take great leaſure: for if thou wilt vſe and obſerue theſe rules, alreadie by me taught, and ſhall hereafter follow, thou ſhalt finde it but a play to make anie horſe readie, in compariſon of the great toile that our common riders do take, in making of their horſes, or rather, in marring of them.

Kingdon.

I pray you tel me what you meane by this patience.

Clifford.

I meane, thou ſhouldeſt ſpend one whole yeare to learne thy horſe to raine well, to carrie his head ſteadie, to beare light on the hand, to trot well, to ſtoppe, and to aduance.

Kingdon.

Wherefore ſhould I ſpend a yeare in teaching him theſe leſſons, ſith I may teach him them in the ſpace of three or foure moneths, although I ride mine horſe but twice a weeke.

Clifford.

I graunt: but one of theſe horſes that thou ſhalt take a yeares leaſure with, in teaching the foreſaid leſſons, ſhall be more worth than fiue of thoſe which thou ſhalt marre, with ſoaine teaching them, yea, and he ſhall be at ſixtene yeares of age, a more luſtie and ſeruiceable horſe, than thine ſhall be of twelue.

Kingdon.

If I ſhall but onelie ride my horſe twice in a weeke,

hops vpon the points of his shoulders, and with the rod on the right shoulder.

Howe, and at what time you shal learne your horse to gallop the great ring.

Chap. 4.

Kingdon.

AFter my horse can do al these lessons before taught, I would haue you to shew me in what order, and at what age it is best to learne him the field gallop.

Clifford.

First, as touching his age I would not haue you to gallop anie horse vntill he be fiue yeares olde, and the vantage, no nor vntill he be fire, if it be possible, and as touching the maner that you must obserue in teaching him the same, when he can trot his ring perfectly, (as hath beene before taught:) then may ye offer to gallop him sometimes, a quarter, or halfe way about the ring, and in his gallop, you shall helpe him with your voice, and the calues of your legges, at which time you must beare your hand harder, than when you trotted him, to the end, you may make him lift his feete the better, and make him goe vpright in his gallop, which order obserued, you shall most easily teach your horse to gallop.

Kingdon.

But in what time may I teach him to gallop in this sorte?

Clifford.

You shall most easily doe it in the space of two or three moneths.

Kingdon.

Kingdon.

But my horse will gallop of himselfe, being perfect in trotting the ring in the space of thirtie daies.

Clifford.

Yea, but if you put your horse to euery lesson, as soone as he wil learne it, you shal vtterly spoile a young horse: yea, and you shal also by that meanes greatly weaken anie olde horse: you must as well in this, as in al other your doings, haue patience, and take great leasure: for if thou wilt vse and obserue these rules, alreadie by me taught, and shall hereafter follow, thou shalt finde it but a play to make anie horse readie, in comparison of the great toile that our common riders do take, in making of their horses, or rather, in marring of them.

Kingdon.

I pray you tel me what you meane by this patience.

Clifford.

I meane, thou shouldest spend one whole yeare to learne thy horse to raine well, to carrie his head steadie, to beare light on the hand, to trot well, to stoppe, and to aduance.

Kingdon.

Wherefore should I spend a yeare in teaching him these lessons, sith I may teach him them in the space of three or foure moneths, although I ride mine horse but twice a weeke.

Clifford.

I graunt: but one of these horses that thou shalt take a yeares leasure with, in teaching the foresaid lessons, shall be more worth than fiue of those which thou shalt marre, with soodaine teaching them, yea, and he shall be at fiftene yeares of age, a more lustie and seruiceable horse, than thine shall be of twelue.

Kingdon.

If I shall but onelie ride my horse twice in a weeke,

in the ring, he will become so iustie and perfecte in that lesson, that he will gallop whether I will, or not.

Clifford.

I neuer said vnto you, that you should ride your horse but twice a weeke, but that you should rather ride him thrice a weeke, giuing but verie fewe ring turnes, after he beginnes to be perfect, but rather ride him forth right in some high way, a soft trot two or three miles at euerie time, by which meanes you shall make your horse, not onelie to raine well, beare light on the hand, and to trot well, but you shall also make him strong, and disposed to do al lessons that you shall put him to, noting alwaies, that you giue not the horse such trauell as may decrease his strength, but rather increase the same, as is before taught.

Kingdon.

By this accompt, you will haue me to take vppe my horse, at foure yeares and the dauntage, and not teach him anie thing, vntill he be fiue yeares of age, and the vantage.

Clifford.

Nay, in saying so, you doe me wrong, for I haue taught you how to make your horse to trot, and to gallop your ring, and the field gallop, to stoppe, and to aduaunce, to goe backe, carrie his head steadie, & to raine wel, which is the chiefe principle and foundation of making of your horse: for an horse which is perfect in these foresaid lessons vpon his trot you shall easilie make him a perfect readie horse within the space of foure or fiue moneths, if so be he be of age and strength agreeable.

Kingdon.

I can not denie, but that you haue taught me sufficiently howe to make my horse to do al these lessons vpon the trot, but as touching his gallop, you haue taught me nothing that I can remember.

Clifford,

Clifford.

I graunt, but now I will teach you, vpon this condition, that you ſhall ſeldome or neuer gallop any horſe till he be almoſt fiue yeares of age: & then, when you haue trotted your horſe, as you ſhal thinke ſufficient, you may gallop him two or three turnes vpon ech hand, and then ride forth right in ſome furrow, if he be a young horſe, & of good mouth: but if he be an olde horſe, and harde of mouth, ſtop him in your ring, and make him go backe fiue or ſixe paces, which done, light from him, flatter him, giue him graſſe to eate, as is aforeſaide, and do no more with him that day.

Kingdon.

I maruaile not a little, why you haue with ſuch diligence taught mée all other leſſons, and would ſéeme ſo lightly to paſſe ouer this, of learning my horſe how to gallop.

Clifford.

It is néedeleſſe to teach you any more, for that euerie horſe will take it too faſt of himſelfe, and I neuer ſaiue in my life, any rider that woulde not both gallop his horſe too yong, and alſo too too much.

Howe to teach an horſe to turne readily on both handes.

Chap. 5.

Kingdon.

Hauing alreadie taught my horſe to raine wel, carie his head ſteadie, beare light on the hand, trot, ſtoppe, goe backe, and tread his rings vppon pale, trot, and gallop, both orderly and luſtily,

and that he is of age and strength, sufficient to make a mannage, I would desire you to teach me, howe, and in what order I shall make my horse to turne readily on both hands, without straining his backe and loines, or otherwise disordering or weakning him, for ý I haue hard you saie, that the furrow turnes, by Gryson taught, doth greatly weaken the backe and loines of anie horse, and also, that diuers horses thereby are vtterly marred and made reskie. And also I haue often heard you saie, that you haue had good experience thereof, in a bay horse of sir Thomas Scots in Kent, and also in a roane horse of Mr. Gregorie Prises of Hereford, Cast: and likewise in a grey gelding of sir Iohn Tracies in Glouceſter shire, and a dapple grey horse of Nassaws, base sonne to the prince of Orange. All which foure horses were disordered by turning them too short, and that you reformed these two last named, by causing them to make their mannage in a couple of large rings. And afterwards, hauing made them perfect therein, then you caused them to make their turnes in lesse and lesse roomes, in such sort, that they were throughly reformed, by meanes therof. Wherfore, I pray you to shew me in what order you did the same.

Clifford.

When thy horse is of age, and can do al those lessons, by thee aboue recited, then thou shalt vse him to one ring, and giuing him fiue or sixe turnes on the right hand vpon his trot, then shall you turne out of the foresaide ring vpon your left hand, as though you woulde marke out an other ring: but you must not take one quarter so much compasse, as your ring is in greatnesse. And hauing brought your horse about, enter into your foresaid ring on the left hand, and hauing giuen him 6. turnes, then shall you ride out of your ring, and change hands as before is: that always, whē you change hands, you turne him as short as may be: and also help him

with your voice, and contrarie calue of legge, and with your rodde by letting the point fall towardes his contrarie shoulder. And when your horse can in this sorte gallop the foresaide ring, and change from hand to hand in this order, then shall you treade out a ring something lesser: And hauing made him perfect in the same, then shall you also make your third ring lesser than the second, and so shall you, by little and little, make your horse turne so readily and perfectly as is possible, without anie disorder, for by your changing from hand to hand, you shall teach him howe to make his mannaging turnes, so readily and short, as anie horse (taught in a furrow) did euer make, noting alwaies, that when you chaunge handes you helpe him in such sorte, that you make him to turne in verie short rome, and also with greater swiftnesse than when you gallop or trot aboute your ring. Also it is verie good to change hands within your ring, in this sort: hauing giuen your horse fiue turnes on your right hand, then shall you turne him so short vpon the same hand, that you may ride to the other side of your ring, right through the middle thereof, where you shall cause your horse to turne on the left hād into the same ring: this is a good waie to change hands, but the former is much better, for that in the first, you turne your horse whole about in a verie narrow compas, and in this you giue him but a quarter of a turne, but it is verie good to make your horse perfect in them both.

Kingdon.

Hauing thus brought my horse to turne readily on both hands, both vpon pase, trot, and gallop, and that he wil change from hand to hand, alwaies keeping his gallop in one selfe ring, which shall not exceede aboue the greatnesse of eight or ten paces about: then would I desire you to teach me howe to acquaint my horse first, with his mannage without disordering him.

Clifford.

Clifford.

When he is perfect in trotting and gallopping the forsaide little ring, then shall you make two rings of the selfe bignesse as before, which woulde be distant one from an other thirtie or fortie paces. That done, make a right furrow or path, betweene them, entring into one end of the same, and ride to the other, where you shal make two turns on your right hand on the forsaid ring: that done, you shall ride back againe, in the self furrow, to the other ring, and giue him two turnes on your left hand: this being done, you shall ride againe to your right ring, and giue him two turnes, as at the first: then shall you ride him backe againe, almost to your left ring, where you must stoppe him. Thus shall you haue made foure turnes on your right hand, and but two on the left: which order you must obserue in al your doings, to beginne with the right hand, and ende with the same: this shall be inough for the first time, remembring, that in giuing your horse anie lesson, whatsoeuer, till such time, as he be a perfect readie horse, that you neuer offer him it, but that you acquaint him therewith, first on his pase, before you offer it him on his trot or galloppe: for by rash, bedlem, and brainsicke haltinesse, not onelie horses are disordered and marred, but mightie armies also haue beene thereby ouerthrown, and vtterly confounded. Note also, that when your horse hath done his lesson in this sorte, walke him halfe an houre, at the least, in the selfe rings, and path, vpon a soft pase, obseruing the same order, in pasing that you did when you trotted him.

Kingdon.

But how, and when shall I teach my horse to gallop theis forsaid mannaging rings?

Clifford.

When he is throughlie acquainted with this lesson

vpon

vpon his trot, then ſhall you, when you haue trotted him once about, giue him the other turne vpon his gal-loppe. This being done, you ſhall ride to your other ring vppon a trot, and enter the ſame with a ſwifter trot than you did before, making him turne once vpon the ſame, and at the ſecond gallop as before. Thus ſhall you chaunge from hand to hand, as often as you ſhall thinke requiſite: And when he ſhal be verie perfect in this leſſon, then may you put him to do it, all vppon his gallop, noting, that as he is perfect in the large ring, you cauſe him to treade out an other paire of rings, of two paſes leſſe compaſſe than your firſt. Thus ſhall you diminiſh the largeneſſe of your ring, by little and little, till you haue made him turne in ſo narrow rome as is poſſible for him to do, ſo that you will take good heede, that you chaunge not your horſe from his mannaging rings of tenne paſes about in largeneſſe, and thirtie paſes one from an other, till ſuch time as he can manage in the ſame perfectlie, lightlie, and readilie, ſo pleaſauntly, and willingly, that you and he ſhall ſeeme as though you both had but one minde: and when your horſe is in this ſorte verie perfect, I woulde haue you walke him out right vppon a trot two or three miles without giuing him anie of theſe foreſaid turnes, and then at the nert time you ride him, giue him this leſſon againe: yea, I haue euer vſed after my horſe began to be perfect in theſe managing rings, to offer him the ſame but once in eight or tenne daies, and to ride him a little euerie other daie, to exerciſe and acquaint him with trauel, by which meanes I did not onlie keep my horſe in ſtrength, ſound, and well diſpoſed, but alſo, that he did his leſſons a great deale more willing when I put him to do them: for continuall beating your horſe vpon one leſſon, ſhall too too much confound and diſorder him after ſuch time as hee can do it willingly and perfectly, as is before ſaid.

D. Clifford.

Kingdon.

When you will haue me, when my horſe can once manage in theſe large rings, that then I ſhall bring him by leſſe and leſſe roome, by a little at once, as I find him willing and apte to take the ſame, which I muſt needes graunt to be a verie good waie, for that I ſhall hereby neither diſorder nor ſtraine my horſes back and loines, nor in anie ſorte diſtemper his mouth: but I pray you, is there no other waie to teach my horſe to turne, but this?

Clifford.

Yes, there is a moſt vile waie to teach a horſe to turne in a furrowe or ditch made of purpoſe, which I vſed by the ſpace of tenne yeares in riding ſir Ihon Pollardes horſes of Deuonſhire, ſir Richard Greenuiles, ſir Thomas Scots of Kent, and Maiſter Barnarde Drakes, in all which time, I could neuer make anie horſe, but that he would enterſure when he came to trauell, but for the ſpace of twelue yeares that I haue obſerued this order here by me taught, I haue not onely kept anie young horſe from enterſuring, but alſo, I haue made diuers olde horſes, whoſe backes and loines haue beene almoſt marred by ſodaine and ſhort ſtopping them vpon naughtie ground when they are extreame hot: at which time you muſt note, that your horſe wants one quarter of the ſtrength that he had when he was colde: and alſo, by cauſing him to beate his corſuet, and by learning him a Womanlie or tacktata goats leape, or elſe, by bounding aloft with all foure, as they terme it, which thing, howe vnfit it is for anie horſe of ſeruice or trauel, I commend me to all thoſe which are ſouldiours or riders of experience, who I am ſure will confeſſe this not to be my opinion, but the thing which I haue well tried, of which I would haue you to haue a ſpeciall care, that as ſeldome as maie be, you driue your

horſe

horse into any such heats. And if at anie time it chance thereby that your horse will not willingly do that that you woulde haue him, but that he will be stubborne, and do his lessons out of all order, then I woulde wish you to walke him with a man on his backe, in the same place by the space of one houre at the least, where you giue him his lesson, by meanes whereof you shall throughlie acquaint your horse therewith, and besides that you shall keepe his legges exercised, till he be thorow colde, you shall also prevent the danger of marring your horse, by putting him in the stable where hee must stand still, without exercise, which thing I doe vtterlie disallowe, for that experience hath taught me (to my cost and shame when I was yong) that this is the onlie waie, as hath beene aforesaid, vtterlie to marre your horse, but by following the foresaide order, to exercise him when hee is in anie such extreame heate, I haue founde it a great deale better, and a more sure way to preserue him than to bring him to the stable, although I had there two men to rub him with litter inough vnder him, and warme clothes to couer him, all which things shall not halfe so well prevent the making your horse stiffe in his legs, or ỹ humors that shalbe then dissolued by the means of extreme heate, frõ hauing leasure or place in the bodie, thus exercised, to congeale through idlenes. This (gentle reader) I know well inough, doth not belong to the riders office, yet do I accompt him farre vnworthie of the name & authoritie, either of rider, keeper, or owner that is ignorant how to vse his horse when he is ridden in anie sorte, whatsoeuer, whether it be to trauell him, or to giue him his lessons, running, galloping, or moderatelie to exercise him. This, by the waie of communication, but to our purpose, there is an other waie to teach your horse to turne in this sorte, dig the earth out of the foresaide narrow rings, and make them three foote deeper in the

middle than on the out sides, and calle all your foresaide earth, cleane without your rings, and this shall be a verie good place to manage your horse in at anie time, and to teach him to turne: And when you will learne your horse to turne verie narrowe and brauely, then enter into one of these foresaid places of stop and turne, where you shall turne your horse first vppon a soft pase in somewhat narrower compasse than you did before, and hauing so giuen him fire or eight turnes, stop him and make him goe backe a little, then giue him as many turnes on your left hand without once going out of the foresaid place, and when your horse is thus perfect vpon his pase, then may you offer it him vpon his trot, and also change him from hand to hand sodainely without anie staying. And when you will gallop him, giue him but two turnes on an hand, and then stop him, and make much of him, which being done, giue him two on your left hand, and then returne to your right hand as before, and when he can do it verie perfectlie in this sorte, then maie you vppon his galloppe cause him to make two turnes on your right hand, and two on your left, which being done, yet giue him two more on your right hand, then stop him, and make him go backe, and light from him, euen in that place, without doing anie more with him that daie.

Kingdon.

Sithence you haue taught me howe to make my horse to mannage vppon large turnes, and also, to turne readily on bothe handes, as well on his gallop as trot, nowe would I desire you also to teach me how to make my horse to manage perfectly, in so braue and readie maner as is possible.

Clifford.

After he can turne, as before, vpon his gallop, you shal begin but to giue him one turne on an hand, noting that you take not so much rome as when you gaue him two

two turnes, hauing a ſpecial regard, that you make him cloaſe his turne at your departure out of your place of ſtop and turne.

Kingdon.

What meane you by cloaſing of his turne, and by taking leſſe rome than when I gaue mine horſe two turnes: I praie you teach me more plainlie, for I doe not vnderſtand your meaning therein.

Clifford.

I meane by taking leſſe rome, that you ſhoulde ride ſomewhat within the circle of your former ring, & that you ſhould make your horſe turne in leſſe compaſſe or rome by one quarter than when you gaue him two turnes of an hand, which you muſt do by a litle at once, making him at euerie time you manage him to turne in ſomething leſſe rome, according as you finde the diſpoſition and aptenelle of your horſe. But if you will follow my counſell, turne not your horſe to ſhort, nor giue him to many managing turnes, for that they wil greatly weaken the back and loines of the horſe, of the which thing you muſt haue a ſpeciall care that you make him turne ſomewhat large, and alſo, when you manage him, giue him not aboue fiue or eight of theſe turnes on an hand at once, and as touching cloſing of his turne, I meane, that you ſhal not let him come out of the place that he turnes in till he haue brought his fore feete iuſt in the middle of the path by the which he did enter.

Kingdon.

What do you meane by turning of my horſe ſomewhat large?

Clifford.

I meane by turning your horſe ſomewhat large, that you ſhould giue him ſo much compaſſe in his turning, as the largeneſſe of a cart or wagon wheele is in roundnes, and that you make your path to come iuſt vpon the middle of this foreſaide round place of ſtop and turne, where

you muſt cauſe your horſe to ſtop & turne when you wil manage him, in forme as followeth: When you haue marked out two ſuch round places of ſtop and turne, as hath beene before ſpecified, then ſhall you enter at one end of the path or furrow, and ride to the other ende therof, and when you enter into the foreſaid round place, to make a turne on your right hand, ſee that you turne firſt on your left hand ſo much, as you may ride round about your circle before you come out of the foreſaide place on your right hand: and hauing walked your horſe fiue or ſixe turnes, to acquaint him, or put him in remembraunce what he ſhall doe. Then may you, comming out of the places of ſtop and turne, put your horſe into a ſoft gallop, and ride thereuppon to the other end, and when you come to enter your place of ſtop & turne, ſee that you ſtaie your horſe ſomewhat more vpon the bit than before, to the ende you maie make him lift his feet the better, and go the vprighter in his turning. And in going about your foreſaid circle, ſee that you keepe him in his gallop, and that you ſtaie ſo much vpon the hand, that he maie not go halfe ſo faſt in his turning, as when he gallops right forth: and that you help him with your voice, calues of your legs, with your rod vpon ỹ contrary ſhoulder, and with the contrary ſpurre alſo, if need be: but I haue euer found the inſide of my foote to be much better to ſtrike him withal, than to giue him the ſpurre, when I haue managed my horſe, for I will not giue a ſtrawe for that manage that the inſide of the foote, and the ſight of the rod, with the point toward the contrarie ſhoulder, is not ſufficient to make him turne ſo readilie, and ſwiftly as is poſſible. And when your horſe is thoroughlie acquainted with his manage in this ſorte, you ſhall ſee him beginne to turne, euen of him ſelfe, ſo ſhort as if he had been taught two yeares in a furrow or ditch. But in any caſe, ſee that you take ſuch compaſſe in

turning

turning of him, as hath beẽ before taught, for feare of straining your horses backe and loines, when you shal chance to ride him vpon naughtie ground.

Kingdon.

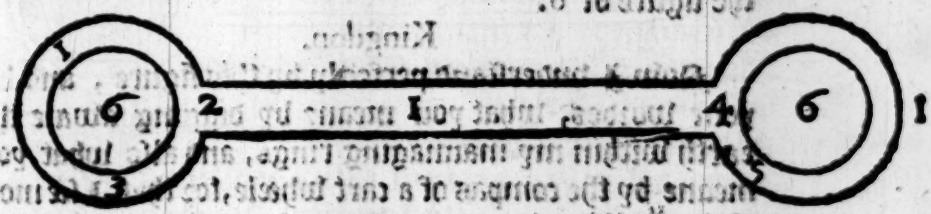
And why, I praie you is this called a mannage?

Clifford.

I knowe not whie it is called a mannage, but that it is vsuallie so called, that am I sure of, whensoeuer a horse doth vpon his gallop, stoppe, and turne, in two such narrow places, as hath beene before mentioned, being distant the one from the other thirtie or fortie paces, as this figure doth most plainlie represent vnto you the right fashion, and true manner of the mannaging place, vsed of all the best horsemen in Christendome at this daie.

Kingdon.

Whereas you saie I must enter into one ende of my managing place, and when I come to the other, to giue mine horse a turne on the right hand, I must first turne on my left, so much as I may ride rounde about a circle, in largenesse and fashion of a cart or wagon wheele, and that I shal not enter within the compasse of the foresaide wheele or peece of ground of that largenesse, but ride rounde about the saide, surely I doe not perfectly vnderstand your meaning therein.



Clifford.

Clifford.

But this figure shal most plainly make thee vnderstand my meaning herein, and how thou shouldest doe the same: for thou shalt finde the place where thou must enter first into the managing place marked with the figure of 1. and the furrowe also in the which thou shalt passe thy managing path marked with the same figure, and where thou shalt first stay thy horse vppon the bridle a little and turne something on thy left hand, thou shalt find it marked with the figure of 2. and where thou shalt beginne to turne on thy right hand it is marked with the figure of 3. But thou hast to note, that thou maist not depart out of the foresaide circle til thou hast brought thy horses forefeete vpon the figure of 2. which I call cloasing of his turne, and when thou shalt come to the left place of stoppe and turne, thou shalt turne on thy right hand from the figure of 4. to the figure of 5. and obserue the selfe same order in all points, as thou diddest in the right place of stoppe and turne marked with the figure of 2. and 3. and the left is marked by the figures of 4. & 5. and the place by which thou must enter, and the mannaging path are marked with the figure 1. as before. And the little peece of grounde which thou must rive about whē thou wilt gine thy horse some compasse in his turning, or ꝑ hollow pit after the earth is digged out, as hath beene before taught, is marked with the figure of 6.

Kingdon.

Now I vnderstand perfectly by this figure, and by your wordes, what you meane by digging awaie the earth within my mannaging rings, and also what you meane by the compas of a cart wheele, for that I see most plainely this peece of ground marked with the figure of 6. and a circle drawen round about the same, within the which I must not enter when I manage my horse,

as

as you saie, but I would desire you to shew me to what purpose I shall dig away the ground there fote deeper in the middle than vpon the out edges, sith I maie not turne my horse anie shorter, than before the earth was digged awaie.

Clifford.

As touching thy demaunde why thou shouldest digge awaie the ground, I aunswere, that thereby thy horse shall go a great deale the vprighter in his turning about a pit than vpon the plaine ground, and he shall be in lesse daunger to slide with his hinder feete, wherewith thou mightest marre thy horse, for that it is verie dangerous to teach thy horse vppon anie slipperie or euen ground. And whereas thou saiest thou must not turne thy horse anie shorter than when thou gallopest him in the managing rings, herein thou art deceiued, for the managing rings would be eight or tenne paces about, which wil amount to fiftie fote in circuit or roundnesse, if thou allow to euerie pase fiue fote (as hath beene before taught:) but when thou hast digged away the earth, and that thy horse can manage perfectly vppon his gallop, then I haue taught thee that thou shalt giue him no more rome than the compasse of a cart or wagon wheele, which will not amount to halfe so manie fote about. Moreouer, as touching the compasse that thou shalt giue him in his managing turnes, it is not onlie easie for the horse, but also it is verie sure when thou shalt turne vpon slippie or naughtie grounde, and thereby thou shalt not halfe so sone disorder thy horse, as if thou shouldest turne him short: yea, I do assure thee, that vnlesse thou take heede to turne thy horse somewhat large, after hee beginnes to be verie perfect, to manage vpon his gallop, thou shalt be worse troubled with some horses, to make them turne large, for feare of falling vppon naughtie grounde, than thou wast at the first, with teaching them

to turne ſhort: for the ſureſt and beſt kinde of turning, not onelie for anie horſe, but alſo for the rider, when he ſhall come to ſeruice, is the large turne, as hath beene before taught: for thou ſhalt hardly finde anie horſe, (after he is throughly acquainted what he ſhal do) that wil not turne too ſhort, euen of himſelfe.

Kingdon.

I had almoſt forgotten two things, the firſt is howe to remedie that horſe which wil not cloaſe his turne perfectly at his departure out of his place of ſtop and turne: the ſecond is, howe to remedie that horſe, that in his turning will preaſe too fall forward.

Clifford.

As touching thy firſt demaunde, thou maieſt make thy horſe cloaſe his turne perfectly, by giuing him two turnes on an hand, at euerie ſuch time as he will not cloſe his turne wel at his departure whē thou manageſt him vpon one turne: & as touching thy ſecond demand, howe thou maieſt remedie thy horſe that will go too fall in his turning: force thine hand in all his doings in two ſortes, the firſt is, as he is in his turning or gallopping, when he begins to force thy hand out of order, then thou muſt ſtop him, and make him go back, & euer as he preſſeth to goe forward of himſelfe, make him goe backe ſo long till he will be glad to ſtand ſtill with the reines loſe vpon his necke, and when thou wilt put him forward to do anie leſſon, do it verie gentlie vppon a ſoft paſe at the firſt: and faile not at euerie time as he beginnes his diſorder, to ſerue him as before. And for euerie turne ꝑ thou giueſt vpon his trot or gallop, it ſhal be good to giue him fiue vpon a ſoft paſe. For I haue remedied diuerſe of theſe horſes that haue beene alſo ſomewhat hard of mouth, by keeping them both from trot and gallop, & by paſing them an houre and an half, or two houres at a time, in a painefull ring made in a pit, or

vpon

vpon an hil ſide, and by ſtopping them oft, and by making them go backe in the ſelfe ſame ring as before. Thou maieſt alſo remedie it by managing thine horſe cloſe by ſome wall, by making him make his laſt turne with his head iuſt againſt the wall at euerie time that thou wilt ſtop him, and let him ſtand ſtil a prætie while, and make him go backe.

Kingdon.

Here you put me in remembrance to demaund two queſtions of you: the firſt is of the pit on a hils ſide, & the other of the rings in the plaine ground, and the reaſons why you teach ſome horſes alwaies in the plain ground, and others, in a pit or on a hils ſide.

Clifford.

As touching thy firſt demaund, I anſwere, that the horſes which thou haſt ſeene me ride vpon plaine ground as well in trotting the large Ring, paſing, or gallopping the ſame or anie other leſſon or exerciſe whatſoeuer, were young horſes of weake bodies, by meanes that they were vnacquainted with trauel, or elſe olde horſes that were almoſt marred for lacke of exerciſe & reaſonable trauel, and thereby were made weake of bodie, and of ſhort breath. All which horſes muſt be handled gentlie, and be exerciſed according to their ſtrength, and as they increaſe in breath and abilitie of bodie, thou maieſt increaſe their trauaile accordingly, which thing if thou obſerue orderly, thou ſhalt neither marre, or diſorder anie young horſe, nor thou ſhalt neuer finde anie olde horſe of ſhorte breath for lacke of exerciſe, nor anie horſe ſo diſordered, but by exerciſing him according to his qualitie and abilitie of ſtrength, thou ſhalt eaſily recouer him: yea, I doe aſſure thee I haue vſed more diligence, and taken greater paines, in ſearching out the nature and diſpoſition of euerie horſe according vnto the diuerſitie qualitie or breede,

and howe hée might with moſt eaſe, and beſt force bring anie horſe to do his leſſons in good order, and then in ſearching what hee ſhoulde doe, for in my iudgement, it is but a ſmall matter to knowe what ſhould be done, but it is a great matter to knowe howe it ſhoulde be done, ſo as thereby, thou in commaunding obſerue this rule, to ſéeke a great deale more howe to commaund without offence: which ſhal be, when thou in commaunding the wiſe and expert, ſhalt intreate them as friends, and not commaund them as ſlaues, and with the ignorant & rude ſort, thou muſt intreate them as thou wouldeſt do children or fooles, whome thou wouldeſt be loath to offend, not ſo much for the feare of that they may doe againſt thée, but in reſpect of the ſhame and diſcredit that may happen vnto thée, by abuſe, where if thou haddeſt the true vſe, thou ſhouldeſt not onelie kéepe them from diſcontentment, but alſo, thou thy ſelfe ſhouldeſt thereby be by them well ſerued: yea, I haue béene long of the opinion that he is farre vnworthie the credite to commaund, y hath not either by reaſon or experience, or elſe by learning the knowledge howe to imploy the moſt vileſt perſon to ſome profite: yea, and that with the leaſt offence to him that is poſſible, and to the other ſort that are ſo ſtubborne, that you muſt be forced to vſe a bridle, to maiſter them withall, yet let it be ſo gentle, that after they yéeld, for that there is no other remedie, that then they may perfectly knowe, that the cauſe why thou haſt ſo ouermaiſtred them, is not of malice, but that they haue forced thee through the qualitie of their fault, and thou art rather ſorie for their correction, than that thou doeſt it to take anie pleaſure or delight to exerciſe this crueltie. If thou canſt well ponder and conſider theſe things, thou ſhalt vſe ſo great diligence, or to ſpeak more plainly no ſuch lightneſſe, haſtineſſe, and brainſick bedlemneſſe, as thou maieſt ſée a number of madmen, monſters,

sters, diuels, or tormētors of horses vse in teaching their horses, & going about to bring them to some order, who are vtterly blinde or destitute of that most noble rule, I meane the true art of gouernment, without the which, though a number of ignorant men, chance to make some horses of good disposition readie inough, yet when they come to trauell, we finde them marred, by disordinate handling of them, and vnreasonable vsage: but as touching the horses that are of disposition stubborne by nature, where they make one, they marre fiue: yea, I dos certainely beleeue, that all those that are ignorant in the nature and disposition of euerie horse that they shal presume to teach, are but in sort a kinde of presumptuous mē, for in this knowledge aboue al other, doth the whole ground of the art of Riding consist. I confesse I haue beene somewhat tedious: But oh that thou didest know what griefe it is to me, that I am not able here fullie to make thee vnderstand my experience and opinion in this matter, for lack of learning to set downe y thing in words orderly which I haue so perfectly attained to, by continuall vse & practise. But to our purpose, by that that I haue said I would haue said, y thou shalt ride al those horses that are weake, either for lack of age, exercise, or through euil handling, in rings made vpon plaine and firme ground, & that thou therein vse such moderate trauell, that thy horse may daily increase his courage and strength, fully as much as he profits in learning of his lessons. And as touching thy seconde demaund why I ride in a pit, or vpon a hils side, that haue I allways found to be most excellent for any horse that is of great strength & courage, and also for such horses as are stubborne, of hard mouth, vnnimble of foote, and that will leane too much on one side in their turning, for the ring made in a pit or vpō a hils side, is a thousand times better to make your horse go vpright in his turning, & to be nimble of foote,

and howe hée might with moſt eaſe, and beſt force bring anie horſe to do his leſſons in good order, and then in ſearching what hee ſhoulde doe, for in my iudgement, it is but a ſmall matter to knowe what ſhould be done, but it is a great matter to knowe howe it ſhoulde be done, ſo as thereby, thou in commaunding obſerue this rule, to ſéeke a great deale more howe to commaund without offence: which ſhal be, when thou in commaunding the wiſe and expert, ſhalt intreate them as friends, and not commaund them as ſlaues, and with the ignorant & rude ſort, thou muſt intreate them as thou wouldeſt do children or fooles, whome thou wouldeſt be loath to offend, not ſo much for the feare of that they may doe againſt thée, but in reſpect of the ſhame and diſcredit that may happen vnto thée, by abuſe, where if thou haddeſt the true vſe, thou ſhouldeſt not onelie kéepe them from diſcontentment, but alſo, thou thy ſelfe ſhouldeſt thereby be by them well ſerued: yea, I haue béene long of the opinion that he is farre vnworthie the credite to commaund, ỹ hath not either by reaſon or experience, or elſe by learning the knowledge how to imploy the moſt vileſt perſon to ſome profite: yea, and that with the leaſt offence to him that is poſſible, and to the other ſort that are ſo ſtubborne, that you muſt be forced to vſe a bridle, to maiſter them withall, yet let it be ſo gentle, that after they yéeld, for that there is no other remedie, that then they may perfectly knowe, that the cauſe why thou haſt ſo ouermaiſtred them, is not of malice, but that they haue forced thee through the qualitie of their fault, and thou art rather ſorie for their correction, than that thou doeſt it to take anie pleaſure or delight to exerciſe this crueltie. If thou canſt well ponder and conſider theſe things, thou ſhalt vſe ſo great diligẽce, or to ſpeak more plainly no ſuch lightneſſe, haſtineſſe, and brainſick bedlemneſſe, as thou maieſt ſée a number of madmen, mon-

ſters,

sters, diuels, or tormētors of horses vse in teaching their horses, & going about to bring them to some order, who are vtterly blinde or destitute of that most noble rule, I meane the true art of gouernment, without the which, though a number of ignorant men, chance to make some horses of good disposition readie inough, yet when they come to trauell, we finde them marred, by disordinate handling of them, and vnreasonable vsage: but as touching the horses that are of disposition stubborne by nature, where they make one, they marre fiue: yea, I doe certainely beleeue, that all those that are ignorant in the nature and disposition of euerie horse that they shal presume to teach, are but in sort a kinde of presumptuous mē, for in this knowledge aboue al other, doth the whole ground of the art of Riding consist. I confesse I haue beene somewhat tedious: But oh that thou diddest know what griefe it is to me, that I am not able here fullie to make thee vnderstand my experience and opinion in this matter, for lack of learning to set downe ẏ thing in words orderly which I haue so perfectly attained to, by continuall vse & practise. But to our purpose, by that that I haue said I would haue said, ẏ thou shalt ride al those horses that are weake, either for lack of age, exercise, or through euil handling, in rings made vpon plaine and firme ground, & that thou therein vse such moderate trauell, that thy horse may daily increase his courage and strength, fully as much as he profits in learning of his lessons. And as touching thy secōd demaund why I ride in a pit, or vpon a hils side, that haue I always found to be most excellent for any horse that is of great strength & courage, and also for such horses as are stubborne, of hard mouth, vnnimble of foote, and that wil leane too much on one side in their turning, for the ring made in a pit or vpō a hils side, is a thousand times better to make your horse go vpright in his turning, & to be nimble of foote,

than to spur thē, whip them, & beare so hard a hand vpon them, that many times they do more harme to the horses mouth in one houre, than they are able to recouer in one whole yere.

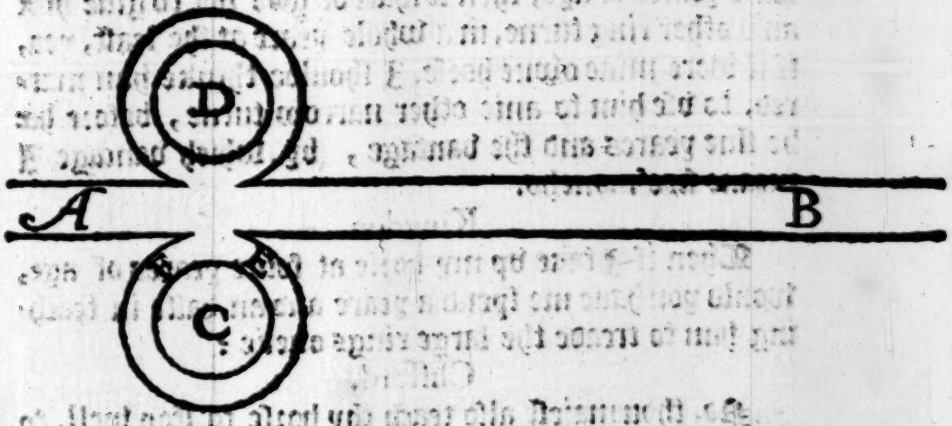
Kingdon.

Seeing this ring made in a pit, or vpon a hilles side, is so good to reforme anie horse that will leane on the one side in turning, or that is verie vnnimble of foote, I would desire you to shewe me (for my better vnderstanding) the figure or forme, not onlie of this ring, but also of all other rings and riding places, needefull to be vsed to make a readie horse, with the largenesse, fashion, and vpon what ground is best.

Clifford.

The more I teach thee, the more vnskilful, I thinke, thou art. But bicause thou shalt not haue any excuse of ignorance in this art of riding, I will shewe thee ẏ true figure & largenes that is required in euerie riding place, euen from the first to the last, saue one, which is already most liuely expressed in the chapter of mannaging thy horse. And first of the rings in the plaine ground meete to be vsed for a young horse, at his first entring into his lessons, thou shalt make them in forme as followeth: as touching their largenes, let one of them be 50. paces about at ẏ least, according as this figure doth most plainly shew thee: for thou shalt find thy entring place into ẏ end of thy mannaging furrow marked with the letter A, and the place where thou shalt stop thy horse marked with ẏ letter B in the self same furrow, where thou shalt stop thy horse when thou shalt haue made an end of thy ring turnes. And the right ring is marked with the letter C, and the left ring with the letter D, here most plainly to be seen: & the place where thou shalt enter into ẏ right ring marked with this letter E, & where thou shalt depart ẏ same ring to stop thy horse wᵗ this letter F, whē he shal haue done this lesō of treding ẏ large ring.

Kingdon.



Kingdon.

But shall I not turne my horse in this managing furrow when I haue stopped him?

Clifford.

No, thou shalt neuer turne thy horse in anie furrow, for that is the onelie waie to straine thy horses back and loines, to the vtter vndoing and marring of him, and also if the Rider lacke knowledge, and that he be not verie patient, he may quicklie make his horse so restie that he will neither turne nor yet go forward, and if thou were not verie forgetfull, or else to to dull in vnderstanding I haue taught thee heeretofore plainlie enough how thou shouldest make thy horse first perfect in the great ring of fiftie pases about, vntill he can tred this same first vpon his pase, next vpon his trot, and last vppon his gallop, and that in all his doings that he raigne well, and that he beare light his head.

Kingdon.

How long time shall I vse my horse to these large rings.

Clifford.

His age must be thy rule therein, for if hee bee but

foure

foure yeares of age, then it ſhall be good not to giue him anie other ring turne, in a whole yeare at the leaſt, yea, if it were mine owne horſe, I ſhoulde thinke him marred, to vſe him to anie other narrow turne, before he be fiue yeares and the vantage, by which vantage I meane fiue moneths.

Kingdon.

Then if I take vp my horſe at foure yeares of age, would you haue me ſpend a yeare and an halfe in teaching him to treade the large rings onelie?

Clifford.

No, thou maieſt alſo teach thy horſe to ſtop well, to keepe his furrowe iuſt and right, as well in ſtopping, as in going forward, thou maieſt alſo teach him to go back, to aduance, and thou maieſt acquaint him with trauell, by riding him right forth euery ſecond day an halfe mile, after that thou haſt (vpon his trot) giuen him ſo manie ring turnes, as ſhal be agreeable to his ſtrength for the firſt halfe yeare, and the ſecond halfe yeare you muſt ride him one mile, and the third halfe yeare, thou maieſt ride him twice as much, if thou wilt take great heede, not to weary thy horſe too much in treading theſe rings, this kinde of trauaile ſhall make thy horſe, not onelie light, but alſo he ſhall be verie ſtrong, and of a healthie and ſound bodie: yea, this is the chiefeſt and principalleſt waie, not onelie to make thy horſe light, ſtrong, ſound, to raine well, to beare light on the hand, but alſo, that he ſhall be a durable horſe, both for trauaile and ſeruice.

Kingdon.

But if my horſe be foure yeares of age and the vantage, then woulde I knowe of you howe long time I ſhal take in learning him his leſſon, and exerciſing him in this ſort?

Clifford.

They

Then one yeare shall be inough, if thou meanest by the vantage six moneths.

Kingdon.

I pray you teach me also how long time shall be sufficient, if my horse be fiue yeares of age before I giue him any lesson.

Clifford.

Then foure moneths shall be inough, and yet this horse may be made as readie when hee commes to fiue yeares of age, as he had beene begunne to be ridden at foure yeares of age, yea, and I had rather haue one of these horses of fiue yeares and an halfe of age, so that he be made gentle before, and his mouth vnspoiled, than foure of those horses that shall be taught too young, for that the one, when hee commes to be readie, will haue no abilitie or strength of bodie, to maintaine his doings, and the other shall be so strong, that before (with orderly handling) he become anie thing wearie, the rider shall not onelie haue a good stomacke to his breakefast, but hee shall be glad also to rest himselfe.

Kingdon.

But if so be I chaunce to finde a horse of fiue or seauen yeares of age, made gentle, and throughlie acquainted with trauaile, howe long time shall be sufficient to teach him to treade the foresaide large rings?

Clifford.

Then in two moneths thou maiest haue made him treade perfectly both vpon pase, trot, and gallop, and in foure moneths, thou maiest haue made him both a readie and a seruiceable horse: yea, I haue made diuers old horses that haue beene verie hard of mouth, and that neuer knew how to treade a ring vpon a trot, verie seruiceable horses within the space of fiue or eight moneths, and to beare so light on the hand as a man could desire,

without vſing anie other bit, than a plaine Cannon, after I had perfectly reformed him vpon a trench in ſuch order as hath beene before taught.

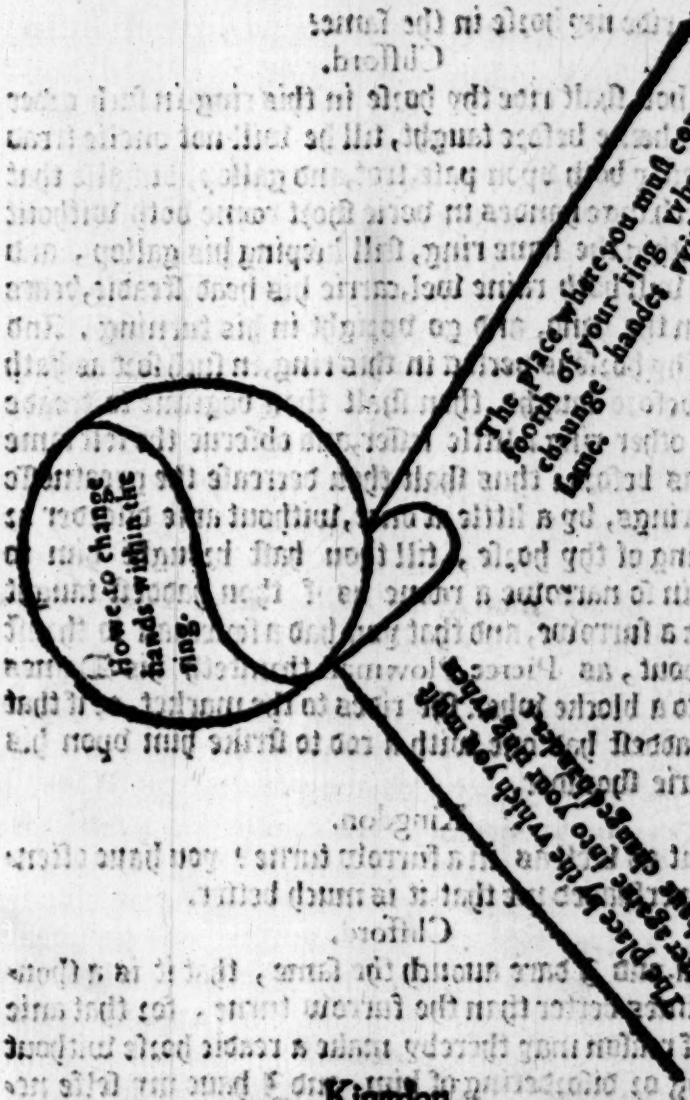
Kingdon.

Now vnderſtand I perfectly howe to make my horſe raine well, carrie his head ſteadie, and howe to treade his large rings perfectly, and of what faſhion they ſhould be made. But nowe woulde I haue you ſhewe mee the faſhion of the one ring, by you before mentioned, in the which you woulde haue mee to teache my horſe to turne readily by changing him from hand to hand in the ſelfe ring.

Clifford.

By this figure thou maieſt vnderſtand the true faſhion of the one ring, and howe thou ſhalt change from hande to hands as well within as without the ſame ring.

Now



Kingdon.

Now I perceiue howe I ryde my horse in a ring, howe I must change handes without the same; by the little halfe round cirkle vppon the out side thereof, and how I shall change handes within the same ring, by the strike that goeth right ouer the middle thereof, but I woulde request you to teach me howe long

I shall ride my horse in the same?

Clifford.

Thou shalt ride thy horse in this ring in such order as hath beene before taught, till he will not onelie tread it perfectly both vpon pase, trot, and gallop, but also that he can change handes in verie short rome both without and within the same ring, still keeping his gallop, and that he will both raine wel, carrie his head steadie, beare light on the hand, and go vpright in his turning. And when thy horse is perfect in this ring, in such sort as hath beene before taught, then shalt thou beginne to treade out an other ring a little lesser, and observe the self same order as before: thus shalt thou decrease the greatnesse of the rings, by a little at once, without anie disorder or straining of thy horse, till thou hast brought him to turne in so narrowe a rome as if thou haddest taught him in a furrowe, and that you had a foteman to thrust him about, as Pierce Plowman thrusteth his Dames mare to a blocke when she rides to the market, or if that thou haddest had one with a rod to strike him vpon his contrarie shoulder.

Kingdon.

But as well as in a furrow turne? you haue oftentimes perswaded me that it is much better.

Clifford.

Yea, and I dare auouch the same, that it is a thousand times better than the furrow turne, for that anie man of reason may thereby make a readie horse without hurting or disordering of him, and I haue my selfe neuer hurt nor disordered anie horse by teaching him in this sort, neither haue I euer taken in hand anie restie or runnawaie iades, but that I haue perfectly reformed them, whereas, if I had offered diuers of them to turne in a furrowe, it had beene vnpossible to remedie them, nay rather I should haue made them ten times worse:

I

I crie you mercie, poore horses, for that I haue called you iades, which is a name more proper to those beasts which do so beastlie misuse you.

Kingdon.

Now do I vnderstand howe to make a horse of good disposition to turne readily on both handes by riding him in a ring, and changing him from hand to hand, within and without the same, and as hee is perfect in the large ring, to cause him to treade out an other a little lesser, and so still as he is perfect in the one, to cause him to make an other lesser, till I haue brought him to turne in so narrowe rome as is possible, the which I must needs confesse to be the most excellentest waie of all other, for that hereby I shall neither hurt my horses mouth, nor haue anie neede to pull him about with the one raine, wherewith I might make him become weake necked, to runne backward, or to reare on end: yea, by turning my horse too short at the first, I may not onely disorder him, but also vtterly spoile his back, loines, and mouth: and besides, I may make him so restie, that he will not do anie thing: but it remaineth, that you shew me how I shall make my ring in a pit, or vppon a hilles side to reforme those horses that are strong of bodie, lustie, and wel able to endure trauaile, and those that are hard of mouth, and vnnimble of foote, and that will leane on the one side in their turning, and that are very stubborn and vntractable.

Clifford.

The ring which thou must make in a pit, or vpon a hilles side differeth nothing in fashion from the other ring, but in qualitie there is great difference, for that the one is fiue times more painful thā the other; bicause in treading the one halfe of this ring, you must ride vphill, and the other halfe your horse goeth downe hill, which will make anie horse, were he neuer so hard of

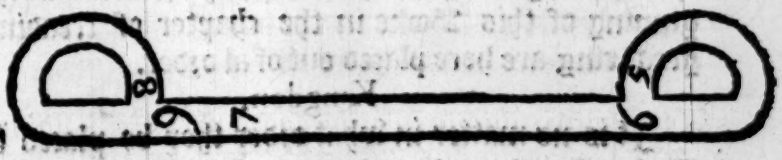
mouth, or vnnimble of foote, or ſubiect to leane on the one ſide in his turning, wonderfully mend his faults, by oftentimes paſſing him in the ſame, and trotting him, and ſometimes gallopping him three or foure times about on a hand, and then ſtopping him, and making him goe backe, which being done, you muſt walke him in the ſelfe ring till he be in breath againe, and then giue him his leſſon, as before, ſo often as ſhall be agreeable with his ſtrength, and to take great heede that alwaies you giue him fiue times as manie turnes vpon his paſe, as you do either vpon his trot or gallop, and when you chaunge handes, you muſt obſerue the ſelfe ſame order as hath beene before taught in all points, and as touching the ring in a pit, which is beſt of all other, if the pit be little inough you may make your ring round about vpon the bankes thereof, ſo high as your horſe may get good ſoting: but if the pit be bigger than you would haue the ring, then may you tread it out vpon one ſide of the pit, and make one part of your ring ſo high vppon the banke or ſide of your foreſaid pit as your horſe can get good holde with his feete, and obſerue the ſame order as in the ring vpon the hilles ſide: theſe two laſt rings are not onelie ſufficient to reforme al the forenamed faults, but thou ſhalt alſo tenne times ſooner haue made thy horſe readie in theſe rings, than in the rings vpon plaine ground, beſides that, when thy horſe is made, he ſhall be ſo ſure of foote, that thou ſhalt hardly euer haue occaſion to ride him on ſuch ground, but that vpon his gallop, he will keepe his feete ſure without anie danger of falling.

Kingdon.

It reſteth that you ſhew vs the reſt of the riding places, with the vſe thereof according to your promiſe made before.

Clifford.

I haue shewed thée the best, but because I haue taken so much paines to teach thée, I would now for my credits sake be verie sorie not to make thée a good horsman, in respect whereof I will shew thée another kind of managing place, not vnproperly inuented and vsed of skilfull riders, and also I will shew thée an other fashion riding place, which is not amisse to be vsed at sometimes to recreate your horse with change of lessons, which riding place I call a double S. which being ioined together, is not much vnlike the figure of eight. And the place where thou shalt first enter is marked with the figure 1. and where thou shalt beginne to turne thy horse on the right hand marked with the figure 2. and where thou shalt beginne to turne on thy left hand marked with the figure 3. here most plainly to be séene: and where thou shalt enter this managing place at the first is marked with the figure 4. and where thou shalt beginne to turne thy horse first vppon the right hand is marked with the figure 5. and where thou shalt cloase thy turne when thou hast ridden aboute the halfe circle is marked with the figure 6. and where thou must stop thy horse when he hath managed is marked with this figure 7.



And when thou hast made a turne on thy right hand then maist thou ride to the other end and make an other on thy left, beginning thy turne at this figure 8.

which

which ſhal be cloſed when thou commeſt to the figure 9. Then maieſt thou ride againe throughe thy managing furrow, and giue thy horſe an other turne on his right hand, as at the firſt: thus maieſt thou change from hand to hand ſo often as thou ſhalt thinke requiſite. And when thy horſe is perfect in managing in theſe two halfe circles vppon his gallop in ſuch order as hath

beene here taught: then maieſt thou by a little at once acquaint him to beginne to turne about thy halfe circle the other waie, ſo that in proceſſe of time you make him turne perfectly, both the one way and the other about the foreſaide halfe circle. Friend Kingdon thy negligence or lacke of remembraunce to demaunde thoſe things in their proper places hath beene cauſe of ſome diſorder for that the large rings, which ſhould haue beene in the beginning of this Booke in the chapter of treading the great ring are here placed out of al order.

Kingdon.

It is no matter in what order they be placed in the Booke, for the diligent reader that will take paines to reade the whole worke, ſhall here finde a moſt excellent order to make ame horſe readie of what nature or diſpoſition ſoeuer he be, and alſo howe to reforme ame reſtife or run awaie horſe perfectly.

Of

Of the Bit and Cauiſon.

Kingdon.

HAuing made mine horſe perfectly readie vppon the trench or brake with a mouſroll and martingale, I would deſire you to teach me what bit I ſhall giue at the firſt.

Clifford.

You ſhal giue him a plaine canon without any playing rings or roughneſſe in his mouth and let the eſſes of your curbe be verie great, to the end that it may not gall the horſes chin: for the ſmall curbe ſhall gall him much ſoner than the great, beſides that, you may hold him tenne times better with the great curbe than with the ſmall: Alſo take heede that you take the cheekes of your canon long rather than ſhort: for with the long cheekes and great curbe you ſhall be able to holde your horſe, not onelie from going away, but alſo from caſting vp of his head, if you holde your bridle hand cloſe vpon the mane: and as touching the hand vppon the bit, I woulde haue you beare it ſo light as is poſſible, ſo that you keepe your horſe from going away, and that he raine with his head in due place, without caſting his head vp or ducking it downe: and I woulde haue you alſo take great heed that you neuer chocke your horſe in the mouth therewith, nor pull your hand ſodainely at anie time, but ſoftly and leaſurely for feare of making him to checke vpon the bit, which is a moſt vile vice, and commeth moſt commonly either by plucking your hand too ſodainely, or by letting the bit hang too ſlow in his mouth, or for that the bit is too rough: it may come alſo by holding too hard an hand vpon him, which is one of the worſt properties that may be in anie horſeman, for it

is not good to let him hang vpon your hand or bridle, but alſo that you feede him with the bit, and oftentimes that you let it go ſo loſe ſ he may reſt his necke and mouth.

Kingdon.

What meane you by holding his head in his due place?

Clifford.

I meane that he ſhould carrie his head in ſuch ſorte that when you would make him ſtand againſt a wall, he may touch the ſame with his forehead and noſe both iuſt togither.

Kingdon.

But by holding mine hand cloſe vppon the mane, I ſhall not be able to feede my horſe with the bit, nor giue him anie more libertie when he doth well, than when he doth ill.

Clifford.

By ſlacking your bridle hande, & holding the endes of the raines in your right hand you may let your rains go when he doth yeelde to the bit, and when he doth offer to caſt vp his noſe, or to go faſter than you would haue him, then drawe the raines ſoftlie through your left hand ſo much as ſhall be requiſite. And as touching the cauiſon I would not haue you to put your cordes croſſe wiſe through the rings thereof, in ſuch ſorte, that you may ſtrain it ſtraight to your horſes head, leaſt you be not able to let it looſer when he doth well, than when hée doth offend, for that ſhall greatly diſcourage him: for both the godlie and wiſeſt trauaile with greateſt pleaſure where they gaine glorie and praiſe, and ſo an horſe where he findeth moſt eaſe after he doth vnderſtād what he ſhall do vnder ſuch a riders hands, can as wel, I ſay, conſider theſe things, and vſe them in time and order accordingly. Thus you ſhal hardly euer ſée or perceiue any contrarietie of wil betwixt theſe two bodies, although the one be reaſonable and the other vnreaſonable, but that

that a man would thinke when he ſhall ſée ſuch an horſe man ride, that both they had but one wil and one mind. But to our purpoſe, you ſhall make faſt a ſtrap of leather to the right ring of your cauiſon, and a buckle to the left ring thereof, in ſuch ſort, that you may buckle it ſo ſtraight as you ſhall thinke méete, but I would aduiſe you to let it be rather an inch too wide, than one wheate corne length too ſtraight: for there is not anye thing ỹ doth more diſorder an horſe than nædleſſe paine and correction, or rather as I may terme it, foliſh torment proceæding through ignorance of a more preſumptuous beaſt than the horſe himſelfe: for whatſoeuer he is that lacketh reaſon he differeth nothing from a beaſt but in name.

Kingdon.

Why ſhall I buckle my cauiſon with a ſtrap of leather, and not rather put the cordes through the rings thereof, with the which I may ſtraine it cloſe to his head, and alſo giue him eaſe inough by letting mine hand go, when he doth well.

Clifford.

As touching thy demaund, I anſweare, that by meanes of the ſtrap thou maieſt make thy cauiſon ſerue thée to double vſe, by putting thy martingall thereon it ſhall ſerue thée in ſteade of a muſroll: and as touching that which thou ſaieſt thou canſt giue him eaſe inough, I anſwere, that that eaſe which thou ſhalt giue hym by letting thine hand goe, ſhall be no other than that thou giueſt vnto thine owne legge, thy boote being too ſtraight gartered by pulling vp thine hoſe with thine hand. But by the vſe of the foreſaid ſtrappe and buckle it is farre otherwiſe, for that thereby thy cauiſon ſhall hang ſo looſe, that it ſhall not gréeue thy horſe at anie time, but when he doth offend onelie.

Kingdon.

By this meanes my cauiſon ſhal hang ſo loſe that it ſhall be readie to fal off my horſes noſe, and alſo when I would ſtraine the raines thereof, it ſhal come vp ſo high behind, that it ſhall ſerue me to ſmall purpoſe.

Clifford.

Thou maieſt remedie it for hanging ouer his noſe with a ſmall ſtrap of leather made faſt at the one end to the middeſt thereof, and the other ende to the headſtall betwirt his eares: and as touching that which thou ſaieſt it wil vſe, it is eaſily remedied, by making a little ſhort chaine faſt to the two nether ſides thereof, of ſuch length as the cauiſon being on the horſes head, and the chaine in his mouth, it may keep it in his due place.

Kingdon.

I muſt néedes confeſſe that this is the beſt waie to make a cauiſon for my horſe that euer I did ſée or heare of, for that it ſhall not gréeue him, but when he doth offend, nor ſhall be able to ſtirre out of his due place: but I woulde deſire you to teach me how to vſe mine hand vpon the ſame, & alſo whether it be good to ride an horſe therewith or not.

Clifford.

As touching thy demaund, I anſwere that thou ſhalt take the left raine thereof ſo ſhort in thy bridle hand, that thou maieſt ſtaie thine horſe ſomething more therewith than vpon the bit: then ſhalt thou take the right raine in thy right hand, and the end of the left alſo in ſuch ſort as thou maieſt drawe the left raine with the right hand ſhorter at thy pleaſure, without letting thy bridle raines go, or opening of either of thy handes, noting that thou ſtraine thy right raine equally as much as the left: but I would aduiſe thée to carrie a maruelous temperate hand vpon thy cauiſon for feare of offending thy horſe too much therewith, vnleſſe it be vpon great occaſion: then ſhal it be tolerable to draw thy left rain ſhorter through thy

thy hand, & alſo the raines of thy bit ſo ſhort ỹ thou giue him no libertie to caſt vp his head: but thou muſt vſe ſuch diſcretion therin, that thou ſtaie thy horſe more vpon thy cauiſon then vpon thy bit, & hauing in this ſort taken a due meaſure of thy raines, thou maiſt vpon anie occaſion offered by thy horſe, correct him by plucking thy right raine a little, ſlaking it againe ſo often as thou ſhalt thinke needfull. And as touching thy demaund if the cauiſon be good, I anſwere that it is excellent good if it be in his handes ỹ vnderſtandeth the true vſe thereof, but otherwiſe it is moſt vile. By this that I haue ſayd, I would ſaie that thou ſhouldeſt ſtaie thy horſe vpon thy cauiſon altogether, and notwithſtanding thou muſt holde the raines of thy bit ſo ſhort, that thou giue him no libertie to caſt vp or ducke downe his head.

Kingdon.

What meane you by this occaſion offered, and by plucking your raines a little, and then to let them goe, I ſee no reaſon why I ſhould not hold my right raine as hard as the left.

Clifford.

As touching the firſt demaund, I anſwere, that occaſion is offered at anie ſuch time as your horſe will not goe backe nor keep his ground, but will preſſe forward when you would haue him ſtand ſtill, or when in his trotting or galloping he will go farther then you would haue him, or that when you ſtoppe him he will force too much vpon your hand: and alſo occaſion is offered when he will not turne on your right or left hand in ſuch ſort as you would haue him. But you muſt note ỹ when he will not turne on your left hand, that you draw the raine on that ſide a good deale ſtraighter then the raines of your bridle, for feare leaſt that when you would ſtraine your raine, you force him too much vp your right raines of the bit, which is a moſt notable error, and yet

verie little conſidered of a number of vnſkilfull men that doe not perceiue how that when they would bring their horſe about on the left hand with the raine of their cauiſon, by pulling their hand on that ſide of his mane they ſtraine the right raine of the bit ſo as the horſe cannot turne with his head but begins to goe backe, to reare an end, or to fall into one diſorder or other, and the rider not vnderſtanding the cauſe doth fall to rating & correcting his horſe, ſo long til he brings him home with ſuch bloudy ſides, his mouth ſo broke, & his noſe ſo mangled, as would moue anie man of reaſon to pittie, to ſee that moſt noble beaſt, of all other moſt commodious for the eaſe of man, to be miſuſed by him that hath ſo much reaſon as to ouer maſter him, but lackes that grace of temperance how to vſe him, & thereby doth moſt ſhamefullie abuſe him. Thus much as touching your firſt demand, and to your ſecond I anſwere, that you muſt hold your raines both a like ſtraight, ſaue when you turne your horſe ſhort, then it ſhall be tollerable to holde your contrarie raine ſo ſhort, that you giue him no libertie to turne with his head, & that you drawe the other ſo much that he may vnderſtand that you would haue him turne on that ſide. But to ỹ purpoſe, I meane by pulling your hand or letting it goe that you ſhould checke your horſe vpon his noſe, whē by temperate carrying of your hand you cannot rule him. But in this aboue al other things you muſt vſe great temperaunce, which if you doe, it is excellent good. Alſo you muſt haue a ſpeciall care when you holde your contrarie raine, that you giue the horſe ſo much libertie therewith that he may turne: for by holding it too ſtraight you ſhall vtterlie diſorder him. And furthermore, as touching the right raine of your bridle when you turne on the left hand, you may helpe him to turne as well with the bit as with the cauiſon, by putting your forefinger of the right hande ouer the right raine

raine of your bit, and drawing it therewith two or three inches longer then the other raine which you muſt holde faſt with the other raine of your cauiſon, without opening of either of your handes, and when you will turne on your right hand you may let the right raine of your cauiſon go, and take holde of your raines aboue your left hand, where you ſhall drawe your right raine ſome thing ſhorter then your left without opening your bridle hand, in which inſtant you muſt holde your right raine ſtiffe till you haue drawen it ſome thing ſhorter then the left, and then cloſe your hand faſt, and take hold on the right raine of your cauiſon and the end of it alſo, wherewith you maye drawe your contrarie raine ſo ſhort as you ſhall thinke good, thus turning on your right hande, you may drawe the right raine of your cauiſon ſo much as ſhall bee needfull to cauſe your horſe to come about ſo often as you ſhall thinke meete, but ſee that you doe it verie gentlie.

Kingdon.

You haue heere vſed one tearme that I vnderſtand not, and that is, when you ſaie I ſhall not checke my horſe in the mouth with his bit, & that on ỳ other ſide you ſaie, I may checke him with the cauiſon when anie ſuch occaſion is offered, as hath bene aboue by you recited: therfore I praie you teach me what you meane therby.

Clifford.

By checking with the bit, I meane that you ſhould never plucke your hand ſodainly, but rather in all your doings draw it ſoftly & leaſurely as is poſſible, ſo that you may make your horſe therby do your will, and preſentlie thereupon ſee that you ſlake it a little, to the end that he may finde eaſe when he doth well, which is the beſt meane to maintaine him in well doing, and by checking him with the Cauiſon, I meane that you ſhoulde plucke your right raine in ſuch ſorte as

you

you would plucke your friend by the cloake lap whom you are loth to offend, at ſuch time as you would ſpeak with him: And alſo you muſt note by the waie, that at ſuch time as you would thus checke your horſe with your right raine, you muſt holde the left raine ſo ſhort, ꝙ you cannot pluck your horſes head aſide: & if it chance at anie time that you finde it needfull to checke your horſe firſt with the one raine and then with the other, you muſt take great heede, that you let the raines of your bit go of ſuch length that you checke him not with his bit in anie caſe, and take great care that you checke your horſe in this ſort ſo many times as ſhall bee needfull to make him vnderſtand your minde, and when he will yéld in ſuch ſort as you would haue him, then let your hand goe, and torment him no more then you are forced of neceſſitie.

Kingdon.

You haue taught me that it is good to beare a temperate hand both vpon my bit and cauiſon, and alſo how much I ſhould force him with the raines thereof, but there yet remaines two things that I had almoſt forgotten, and the firſt is the due place of the bit, & the other is how and in what order I ſhall take the raines of my bit and cauiſon both in one hand at once, and alſo how I ſhall hold my hands vpon the raines of my bit when I ride without a cauiſon, & what you meane by drawing the raines of my bit ſoftlie and letting it goe againe.

Clifford.

To thy firſt demaund I anſwere, that the due place of the bit is, that it hang halfe a fingers breadth higher then the tuſkes of your horſe, and to ſome horſes it is not amiſſe to hang it an inch higher then the tuſkes or fanges of his mouth, but the generall rule that thou ſhalt obſerue herein, is, that thou neuer let it hang ſo

aſide,

aſide that it touch the foꝛe named tuſke, foꝛ if it doe touch his tuſke, it ſhall cauſe him to checke vppon the bit and hurt his mouth ſo as it ſhall bleede. And as touching thy ſecond demaund, thou ſhalt firſt take both the raines of thy cauiſon in thy left hand ſo cloſe vnder the neather part oꝛ roote of your thumbe, as you may holde him faſt with your little finger and thumbe, then ſhall you take the end of your bꝛidle raines in your right hand betwixt your bodie and your bꝛidle hand, then ſhal you put your ring finger betwixt the raines of your bit without letting your little finger goe, which you muſt holde faſt vppon your cauiſon raines, and the neathermoſt part of your thumbe alſo. Then ſhall you cloaſe your thꝛée fingers ſo cloſe as you can, and hauing turned your bꝛidle raines with your right hande ouer the middle ioynt of the foꝛe finger of your left hande, you ſhall holde your thumbe cloſe vppon the Bꝛidle raines, ſo as you giue them no libertie to ſlippe thꝛough your hande, hauing thus taken your bꝛidle raines of a iuſt length and place, the raines of your cauiſon aboue oꝛ ouer them, I meane deeper in your fiſt then the raines of your bit, foꝛ that you holde the raines of your Cauiſon in your full fiſt, and the raines of your Bit but in the middle of thꝛée of your fingers. Then ſhall you let the end of your bꝛidle raines fall out of your right hande, & take hold of the right raine of your cauiſon, and the end of the left alſo in your right hand, then if your left raine bée too long you may dꝛaw it ſhoꝛter by holding your right hande faſt, and ſlaking your left hand a little to let the raines of your cauiſon paſſe til you haue dꝛawen it of ſuch length as you may holde him therewith in ſuch oꝛder as hath bene befoꝛe taught.

Kingdon.

You teach mée héere how I ſhould holde my right

hande falt vpon the raines of my cauiſon, and howe I ſhall ſlacke my left hand till I haue let the raines paſſe through, ſo farre as they come to their iuſt length, which iuſt length is, when I may beare my horſe altogether vppon the cauiſon, and yet holde the raines of my bit ſo ſhort, that if I let ſlippe the lefte raine of my cauiſon but one inch, I muſt ſtaie my horſe altogether vppon the bit, but it reſteth howe I ſhall drawe the raines of my cauiſon ſhorter at my pleaſure, without loſing my right hand or letting the raines of my bridle goe.

Clifford.

If thou bée not more ſenceleſſe then a beaſt, or more negligent then a Newter, that will take neither parte till ſuch time as hée ſées which of them will profit him moſt, I haue taught thée ſufficientlie: But becauſe thou ſhalt knowe that I had rather loſe my life then take in hand anie matter of importaunce, and not bée able to ende or bring the ſame to perfection, though not for thy ſake, who hath negligentlie lefte mining with thy penne, whiles the golden vaine of my experience was moſt ripe and readie, by riding into Sommerſet ſhéere to make good chéere, when in déede thou mighteſt haue béene tenne times better occupied in writing of this worke which I haue begonne with the ſame purpoſe of minde, that hath made mée patientlie to beare all theſe troubles and miſeries as thou maieſt read in the tenth part of my life which ſhall hereafter followe (God willing) which minde and purpoſe in mée was, is, and I truſt in Gods grace ſhall continue ſo long as the breath is in my bodie, onelie to profit my Countrie, the true profeſſours of Gods truth, and aduauncement of his holie lawe. But thou ſhalt nowe knowe that God whome I haue alwaies ſerued, according to the grace which I haue re-

ceiued

ceiued of him, without the which I am not able to thinke one good thought of my ſelfe, hath ſent mée helpe where I leaſt loked for it, that is to ſaie, by the meanes of that godlie man maiſter Anthonie Mooreland, and by that good and learned man Ioſeph Hynxman, the one of them being Parſon of Tortworth, the other Butler to Maiſter Throckmorton, (which is a verie lowe preferment for a Batcheler of Art in my iudgement) who beſides his learning is alſo verie patient in taking paines. Alſo little Anthonie Bowſer I cannot héere forget, ſithence hée hath ſtode ſo manie daies with mée vpon the cold ſtones in Maiſter Throckmortons Stable at Tortworth, to drawe out the firſt draught or coppie of this my worke, for the which mée thinkes hée deſerues praiſe. But to our purpoſe, thou muſt drawe the raine of thy cauiſon through thy lefte hande without letting the raines of thy bit goe, by letting all thy foure fingers goe loſe, and by holding thy bridle raines with the ende of thy thumbe and middle of the fore finger, and then pulling thy right hand awaie from thy lefte hande, that is to ſaie, of greater diſtaunce in ſuch ſorte as thou ſeeſt a ſhoomaker draw his threéde with his right hande when he holdes the left hand vppon the ſhoe, which thou maieſt imitate by holding thy lefte hand faſt in his due place without mouing it, either when thou draweſt thy raines ſhorter or let them goe longer.

Kingdon.

Which call you the due place of the Bridle hand.

Clifford.

The due place of thy bridle hande is right ouer thy horſes creſt, and ſo high aboue the ſaddle as thou maieſt

holde thy elbowe, almoſt as farre backe as the huckle bone, and holde it cloſe againſt thy ſide without letting thy hand reſt or ſtaie vppon the ſaddle bowe: If thy Horſe bee readie that hee can raine well and carrie his head ſteadie, this is the beſt waie, but if it be a young or olde horſe that wil caſt vp his head, then I haue taught thee before that thou ſhalt carrie thy hande cloſe vppon thy horſe his creſt.

Kingdon.

Yet there reſteth one thing that I would requeſt at your hands, and that is, how I ſhoulde holde the raines of my bit in my hande when I ride without a cauiſon, and alſo howe I ſhall vnderſtand what you meane by drawing my hande ſoftlie, and letting it goe againe.

Clifford.

As touching thy firſt demaund, thou ſhalt holde thy raines in all pointes as thou doeſt when thou rideſt with thy cauiſon, ſauing that thou muſt put thy little finger and ring finger betwixt the raines, and then holde the ende thereof in thy right hande with thy rodde, ſo as thou mayeſt draw them ſhorter or let them longer as hath been before taught. And as touching thy ſecond demaund when thou wouldeſt ſtoppe thy horſe, whether vppon paſe, trot, galloppe, or cariere, I would haue thee drawe thy hand ſoftlie, till thou haſt brought it ſo hard or ſtraight as thou maieſt ſtoppe thy Horſe, and euen in the ſame inſtant that he is ſo ſtopped as thou wouldeſt haue him, and beginnes to aduance or yeelde to the bit by going backe, or otherwiſe thou ſhalt preſentlie let thy hand ſlacke a little and take ſo much againe as ſhall be requiſite, yea, I would aduiſe thee to haue ſo great a care not to plucke thy hand ſodainely, nor to drawe it too ſtraight nor carrie it too hard in trauailing

or

or otherwiſe exerciſing thy horſe as thou wouldeſt haue to thine owne feete when thou paſſeſt on a narrow foote bridge which lieth ouer a deepe ditch or hollowe gulfe in rainie and foule weather.

Kingdon.

Seeing that you now giue me occaſion to demaunde you a queſtion of the rod, I deſire you to ſhew me whether it is better to carrie the point thereof forward right ouer my horſes creaſt and eares, or to turne the point thereof backward towards my right ſhoulder.

Clifford.

It is much better to carrie thy rod with the point forward ouer thy horſes creaſt than with the point vpward toward thy right ſhoulder: for when thou carrieſt the point forward thou holdeſt thy rod in thy full fiſt readie to ſtrike thy horſe withall, and when thou carrieſt it with the point vpward towards thy right ſhoulder thou haſt no more but thy forefinger ouer it, by meanes whereof thou canſt not ſo readily helpe thy horſe vppon his left ſhoulder, to the end that he ſhoulde do well, nor correct him when he doth offend.

Kingdon.

I can verie well both help and correct my horſe vpon the right and left ſhoulder, when I haue no cauſon or falſe raines, but when I haue a cauſon or falſe raines, then can I correct my horſe vppon his left ſhoulder as before, but on his right ſhoulder I can doe no more but helpe him, vnleſſe I will let the right raine of my cauſon fall out of my right hand.

Clifford.

But thou maieſt correct him as well, not onelie vpon his right ſhoulder, but alſo vpon his right ſide or buttock, without letting the right raine of thy cauſon goe, if thou wilt but turne the point of thy rod backeward.

Of Vices.

Kingdon.

SIthence you haue heretofore taught mée howe to make a horſe of good diſpoſition readie, I woulde alſo haue you to teach me howe to reforme thoſe horſes that are euill giuen to anie vice: and firſt of the horſe that ducketh downe his head.

Clifford.

I neuer found anie horſe hauing that vice, but that I could reforme him by ſtriking him vpõ the left ſhoulder with the rod, not failing to anſwere him at euerie time at the ſame inſtant that hée doth offend, till hée leaue his fault, thou maieſt alſo correct him with the bit, by chocking him therewith in the mouth, and by giuing him the ſpurre, but theſe two laſt corrections are not halfe ſo good as the firſt, for that if he be tender of mouth, by chocking him with the bit, thou ſhalt make him learn that vile vice of checking or caſting vp his head, if he be hard of mouth, and light of ſpurre, thou ſhalt vtterly marre his mouth, and force him to runne awaie. Note, that in reforming all vicious horſes, thou muſt haue a ſpeciall care to ſearch and to finde out the nature and diſpoſition of euerie of them, which when thou haſt found, thou muſt vſe that temperaunce that a wiſe captaine ſhould in gouerning his ſouldiors, which conſiſteth not in forcing them to doe his wil, but with ſkill and order in making thẽ do as much therof as is poſſible for them to be brought vnto, without diſorder or diſcontentment.

Kingdon.

It ſeemeth me your compariſon is verie groſſe, to compare the gouernement or temperaunce that ſhoulde be vſed vnto men, to horſes.

Clifford.

Clifford.

In reſpect of the beaſt I graunt, but if thou well conſider what the reaſon of man is, and howe farre the vnderſtanding of the bꝛute beaſt is inferiour vnto him, thou ſhalt eaſily perceiue that it is moꝛe requiſite foꝛ him, that ſhall take vpon him to teach a hoꝛſe, to be far moꝛe patient and temperate foꝛ him than that gouerneth men, foꝛ that man doth far ſurpaſſe the beaſt in vnderſtanding what is taught him: But in the rider it is requiſite he haue patience and can well diſſemble, which if he haue, and can vſe in his due time and place, he ſhall hardly euer find anie hoꝛſe of good diſpoſition, but hee ſhall make him continue the ſame, oꝛ anie ſo euil, but that he ſhall eaſily reforme them in ſhoꝛt ſpace.

Hovv to remedie that horſe that checketh and caſteth vp his head.

Kingdon.

YOu haue giuen me good inſtructions alreadie, but yet by the waie I pꝛay you ſhew me howe to reforme that fault in a hoꝛſe that checketh oꝛ caſteth vp his head with the bit, when you offer to do anything with him vpon the ſame.

Clifford.

Firſt giue him a plaine canon without plaiers oꝛ water chaine in the mouth, then buckle it faſt with two pocꝛhmouthes to the two rings of your caniſon: that done, take a ſtrappe of leather with a buckle vppon the ſame, put it thꝛough the foꝛeſaide two rings, then buckle it, and therewith ſtraine the caniſon ſomething

thing cloſe to the horſe his head, then take away the curbe from the canon for the ſtrap and pothmouths is ſufficient to ſerue your turne as well as the curbe, and be farre more better in reſpect of the fault. I haue manie times ridden with ỳ ſame a runawaie or hard mouthed horſe, and more eaſily haue gouerned him therewith than with the curbe, and alſo haue diuers times trotted young horſes that haue beene tender or delicate of mouth in the ſame order, which if I had firſt giuen them the curbe, they woulde haue taken the vice of checking, or caſting vp the head, but by obſeruing this order and after by giuing them a curbe of double leather haue preuented the aforeſaid vice.

Kingdon.

But if my cauiſon be long, it will holde the head of the bit ſo farre backeward, that the cheekes thereof cannot be brought to their due place, which will be verie troubleſome and vnſeemely, and the raines of the bit being ſtrained, the cauiſon wil be readie to fall down ouer the horſes noſe.

Clifford.

If thou be ſo ignorant that thou canſt not make thy cauiſon of fit length for that purpoſe, and alſo putte a ſtrappe of leather to the middle of the cauiſon, and make it faſt to the headſtall betwirt the horſes eares in ſuch order that the cauiſon cannot fall, then thou ſhalt ſhewe thy ſelfe to be more fitter to keepe horſes than come to me to learne to ride.

Howe to correct a Horſe that will reare and fall backe vpon a man.

Clifford,

That

That comes through the fault of the rider, for that he curbeth his horſe too ſtraight, or giues him too hard a bit, or ſtops him too ſodainely, or by checking him with the bit, or by letting it hang too low in his mouth, or by bearing too hard a hand vpon him, or by giuing him too cruell correction in teaching him to aduaunce, or by putting him to too much trauell at one time.

Kingdon.

I graunt it may come by anie of all theſe foreſaide ways or meanes: but I had rather you woulde teach me how to remedie it, then ſhew me how it comes.

Clifford.

I wil teach thée how it comes, to the ende that thou maieſt take héede that thou commit not anie ſuch fault by the which thou maieſt bring thy horſe to diſorder. And as touching the remedie, firſt ride him without a curbe, as hath beene before taught, or elſe with a trench, mouſroll, and martingale, and take héed you tie not your martingale too ſhort at the firſt, and when you will ride him, leade him forth of the ſtable into ſome déepe, marriſh, or rotten ground, with a couple of footemen, each of them hauing a corde in his hand made faſt to the brake: and when you are come into the foreſaide place, raine your horſe firſt to the ſaddle bowe, that done, let the two footemen offer to leade him forth gently: and if he will not goe forth, but offer to reare an end, then let the two footemen ſtrike him on the fore legs with their cudgels, which they muſt carrie in their right hands for that purpoſe, holding the cordes in their left handes, it ſhall be requiſite alſo to haue one behinde him that may at the ſame inſtant whip him wel vpon the two flanckes: and when you haue made him go gently, being rained on the ſaddle, then may the rider take his backe, and when he is vp, take awaie your two cords, and offer to put him

forward, noting, that at the same instant that he offers to stand still to reare an end, you strike him on the fore legges, and let the foteman whip him on the flanks as before. And this order being obserued you shall within the space of fifteene daies make him leaue his fault so cleane as though he had neuer had it: remembring alwaies, that when he beginnes to reare, you let your bridle go and take holde on his mane with your left hand, and when he goes without rearing, make much of him, and torment him not.

Kingdon.

With what shall I strike my horse on the fore legs, and why shall I ride him in a marish ground?

Clifford.

With a good cudgell, beating him therewith ouer the shinnes beneath his knees, it were better if thou haue store of rods, to take fiue or sixe vnder thy girdle, with their points hanging downeward, to the end, that when thou hast broken one, thou maiest draw out an other, for that he feareth a rod more than he doth a cudgell. And as touching the marrish ground, he shal haue more mind to saue himself from sincking in it, than to reare an end, in the which passing to and fro, you shal verie wel tame him, and acquaint him with the correction, by striking him sometimes on the legges. And afterward, being come to the firme ground, carrie your rod or cudgell alwaies in such sort that it may almost touch his knees, and you may also touch him a little therewith in going, by meanes whereof he shall haue more minde to kneele, than to reare.

Kingdon.

By riding my horse in a marrish or rotten ground, I shal not onlie tyre him, but also stand in doubt to leaue him behind me, as I haue knowen diuers ignorãt souldiors to do in Ireland, by means of their brainsick hastines.

Clifford.

Clifford.

If thou be so ignorant that thou canst not chuse thy ground of a reasonable deepnesse, and also to ride so few turnes therein, as thou maiest leaue thy horse both in strength and courage, it shall be more reason that thy horse ride thee then thou him, note that when the horse is acquainted with this correction you may always afterward ride him on the hard ground the footeman following him as before, and forget not to carrie your cudgell also in the selfe sorte as you did at the first.

Howve to correct that

horse that will not go from the stable, or when he meets any other horses vpon the way wil sodainly stand stil, and not go from them, and also being in company with other horses wil not depart the same.

Clifford.

I haue diuers times holpen such a horse by riding him without spurres, with a short whip onelie, whipping him therewith vpon his cods, neuer ceasing til I haue made him to go forwarde, and also by striking him with the great end of my foresaide whip staffe betweene his two eares, if nede so require, for this is a verie good correction, but verie dangerous for the poll euill. I haue also ridden vpon a horse in Flaunders that had this fault, which being afore the ennnie, & I vpon him, haue offered to play his pageant, so that not hauing leasure to take my whip, I haue beene forced to strike him betwixt the two eares with the pommell of my sword, wherewith I haue made him gallop more than foure English miles: you may also haue two footemen, the one with a

whip, and the other with a goade, and when he beginnes his pageant, let them come behinde him, and correct him in the tendereſt places of his body, as hath beene before taught.

Kingdon.

I haue ſeene ſome horſes that would not ſtirre for anie correction.

Clifford.

But if thou do but onelie pricke him with the goade about his noſe and mouth thou ſhalt quickly make him ſtirre, though he be neuer ſo vile of nature.

Kingdon.

How ſhall I remedie that horſe I praie you, that will lie downe when he is corrected.

Clifford.

Throw water vppon his head, and into his eares, then ſhalt thou quicklie ſée him riſe: thou maieſt alſo cauſe a cloth to be caſt vpon his head, and three or foure ſwtmen to holde it down cloſe about him, keeping down his head till he be almoſt ſmothered to death, and when he riſeth, let the ſwtemen beate and rate him with a terrible noiſe, but ſée that thou neither ſpur nor ſtrike him, but let him go gently at his owne eaſe.

Hovve to correct that horſe which is hard of mouth, and will run awaie with his rider.

Kingdon.

I Praie you before you depart, teach mée howe I ſhall reforme that horſe which is hard of mouth, and will neither ſtop, nor do anie other leſſon, but when it ſhal pleaſe himſelfe.

Clifford.

Clifford.

I euer thought ſo, that thou wouldeſt ſtill trouble me with fooliſh queſtions, haue I not alreadie ſufficientlie taught thée how to maiſter anie horſe in ſuch ſort that he ſhould obey, and not to tell me how the horſe hath a wil of his owne.

Kingdon.

I graunt that you haue ſpoken ſome thing as concerning the ſame, but I praie you let it not be grieuous vnto you to teach mée more exactlie, and that not onelie how to remedie it, but alſo what is the principall cauſe thereof.

Clifford.

Firſt as touching the cauſe thereof, thou muſt note that ſome horſes haue it by the imperfection of nature, for that their iawes are ſo narrow and their heads ſet ſo right forwards vpon their neckes, that it is not poſſible for them to raine well, but the moſt part of horſes takes it through the vnkilfulneſſe of the rider, by bearing too hard a hand vppon them, by ouer riding them or by too ſharp corrections out of due time before they make their horſe to vnderſtand what he ſhould do, by meanes whereof they make him ſo fearefull and timerous, that he becomes deſperate, and not knowing what to doe, he falleth to running awaie, to goe backward, or to reare an end, or elſe becomes ſo ſenceleſſe that he will not go for anie beating, no, although you would kill him. This by the waie, but to the purpoſe. Firſt put on your horſe a cannon without a curbe, but you muſt haue a ſpeciall care that you carrie ſo temperate a hand vpon your caniſon as may be, that you diſtemper not your horſe by ſo much tormenting him therwith. Alſo force him with the bit as little as is poſſible, hauing in this order bridled your horſe, ride him faire and ſoftlie in ſome faire or large ring a foote pace, and hauing walked him ten or

twelue turnes vpon one hand, then ſtop him and make him goe backe, but if you cannot make him goe backe by gentle meanes, yet ſtriue not with him in anie caſe, but giue him as many turnes on the other hande. Thus changing from hand to hand, you ſhall giue him ſo many turnes as you ſhall thinke conuenient, taking heede alwaies that to all ſuch horſes you vſe no extremitie before you haue ſought to win him by all gentle meanes poſſible. Hauing in this ſort throughlie acquainted your horſe in this leſſon, then you may begin to trot him, neting that vpon his trot you ſtop him often in the foreſaid ring, and alſo make him goe backe if it may be with gentleneſſe, if not, yet flatter and ſpeake him faire, to the end that you may encourage him not onelie to do that leſſon, but anie other that you ſhall teach him in time.

Kingdon.

But if my horſe will not go backe, it ſhall be to ſmall purpoſe to trot him in the ring, for that I haue heard you ſaie it is not poſſible to make a horſe to ſtoppe well and to beare light vpon the hand, except you firſt teach him to goe backe, and that he will doe it both lightlie and readilie.

Clifford.

Haue I not taught thee before how to make a horſe goe backe by riding him in a deepe waie, hauing high bankes on each ſide, & to vſe the helpe of a footman with a cudgell in his hande, and by ſtriking him on the fore legges, if you cannot by threatening make him goe backe.

Kingdon.

I graunt you haue taught me, but that was to a young horſe and with a trench, but this is to an olde horſe with a bit and cauiſon, and therefore I thinke it to be verie hard to make him doe it vpon the cauiſon and

bit, for that I haue ſéene diuerſe horſes to be made deſperate by tearing and pulling them too much with the cauiſon, and alſo the number is not ſmall of thoſe that I haue ſéene by teaching them vpon the bit, haue their mouths cleane marred therewith, but I neuer knewe anie horſes mouth hurt with a trench or braake.

Clifford.

Ah, I con thée thankes for finding out ſo notable an errour as that is, for to confeſſe the truth, there was neuer young horſe made ſo well mouthed by teaching him vppon the bit and cauiſon, but that he might haue bene made a great deale better vpon the trench or ſnaffle, or olde horſe of anie fault ſo well reformed as with the ſame.

Kingdon.

Then woulde you haue mée to ride my horſe till I had made him goe backe with the ſnaffle or braake onelie?

Clifford.

Not ſo, for I would not haue you ride him onlie therwith, but alſo that you adde a muſroll and martingale thereto, without the which you maye neuer ride anie horſe with a braake, and alſo I woulde not onelie haue you to ride your horſe therewith till he can goe backe, but alſo till he be perfectlie recouered of this fault or anie other whatſoeuer.

Kingdon.

But I haue ſéene ſome horſes ſo wilfull that they would neither ſtop nor goe backe for anie of theſe helpes by you taught.

Clifford.

Nor I neuer found anie but that I could helpe by this correction héere following. At the ſame inſtant that he refuſeth to goe backe for all thoſe corrections or helps, take the one raine of your trench within a fwt of your

bit,

bit, lappe it about your hand, and pull his head so neere your knee, as it is not possible for him to goe awaie, spurre him on the contrarie shoulder, and whippe him well behinde your saddle also with your rodde, or short whippe, winding and turning him from hand to hande, so long till you make him gladde to doe your will, note that in anie case you holde your raines so short, that hee may not goe out of his place, and that you neuer vse this but in great extremitie and vpon good ground for feare of sliding or falling.

Kingdon.

Shall it be inough to serue my horse in this sort one time onelie?

Clifford.

If he offend but once, then hast thou no reason to torment him often, but it shall bee requisite at euerie time he doeth refuse stubburnlie to doe his lessons to serue him in like order, by meanes whereof thou shalt make him to doe all those thinges that thou desirest without once to bee so hardie as to offer to runne awaie.

Kingdon.

But I haue knowen some horses so stubburne and craftie, that at what time you woulde pull him a side with the one raine, hee will holde his head out right with such strength, and also goe awaie so speedelie, that it is not possible for anie man to staie him.

Clifford.

I must needes confesse that thou hast set me hard, but thou shalt knowe that the God of Israel whom I serue, to whom all glorie is due, of all knowledge and inuention hath giuen me grace with credit to performe whatsoeuer I haue taken in hande, by meanes whereof if thou be able to demaund all the questions that is in this Art requisite, I haue no doubt but to answere thee, not

not with learning (for God he knowes I haue none, no not so much as to read one line in anie language) but with true experience which I haue gotten by trauailing with great miserie in Ireland, England, Frannce, and Flaunders.

Kingdon.

In miserie, what miserie haue you bene in? Call you ỳ miserie, to be in such great estimation with Monsieur Lanow at Englemester before he was taken prisoner, in such sort that a number of souldiers enuied your fortune, or call you that miserie which happened vnto you by Monsieur Velleeres when the camp lay at Loo, who gaue you credit with cõmission to go to Nuport to make bridges to passe the armie vpon, in doing whereof your fame was so great, that happie was he that could be acquainted with you or see your worke, and ten times happier was the armie, lying shortlie after at Duncarke, to haue such bridges, or otherwise the Prince of Parma had ouerthrowen them which then lay scattered in three or foure villages, but ỳ espials warning Monsieur Velleeres of the Spaniards comming, by meanes whereof you were commanded to make experience of your bridges for that necessitie required, where you passed the armie with such readinesse ouer the riuer of Duncarke, that the Prince of Parma came to late, and the armie was then in safetie by reason it was betweene two riuers. Then call you that great estimation which you had of him that daie, miserie? or call you that miserie, to be made for your seruice Gentleman of the Artillerie, and also maker of the Marshals horses, and from sitting among seruing men in England, to sit at so honourable a Table as he then kept, and hearing the matters of the armie debated, with such credit and estimation, that happie was that man which could haue you speake in his cause, your estimation and credit was so great with the

aforenamed marshall, and all other noble men of the armie which you did not at anie time decrease, but increase dailie, in such sort, that the campe lying at Rosendale, the foresaid marshal Veleers made you lieuetenant of the Artilleris, to the great admiration of all the noble Captaines that then sate at the Table with him. Moreouer he saide, we shall haue fifteene Canons for the batterie of Wawe, which is a verie strong Castle, belonging to the Spaniardes, whereof Monsieur Posley shall bee lieuetenant of eight of the forenamed peeces, & I make you my lieuetenant of the other seuen, for ỳ the marshal Beeron shall bee maister of the one batterie, and I of the other, where with your seuen Canons you has made the first breach, by reason that the French men left their appointed place, and therefore both vnconstantlie and foolishlie began to assaie the wall in two other places, and the marshal Beeron sent diuerse messengers to you to do the like, but you vtterly refused it, saying, that by constant following your determination you should vndoutedlie obtaine your purpose, which came so to passe, to the great griefe of the French men and great reioycing of the English men, Scots, Flemings, and Wallons, of all which Nations you chose some for your Canon heires, vtterlie reiecting the French men, saying they were to tender and weake of bodies to endure so great trauaile as that required, which was well approued, for that they had the honour to shoote first, which you ouercome from them euen at the third shoote, & afterwards running into the batterie of the French men, you scorned them, saying: are yee the braue souldiers of France, and will suffer a companie of dronken Flemings to take your honour from you, and within three times shooting to be afore ye in despite of yo: and afterward returning into your foresaid batterie, and encouraging your souldiers, by telling them that the generall of the armie did

great-

greatlie commend them, with the which inuention you did make them so striue one against another for praise and glorie, that from morning till one of the clocke in the after none, you had shot in fifténe Canons fifténe hundred shot, for the which seruice marshall Beeron gaue you great commendations, thankes, and rewardes, yea, and afterwardes sent Captaine Hunter vnto you to leaue Monsieur Vellcers, & serue him, & set downe what paie you would and he would giue it, which he most honourablie performed. Therefore I praie you call you this miserie?

Clifford.

I call not this miserie, but the meane by the which I did attaine to the same credit by you before recited, was great and extreame as euer anie man did escape, and afterward did make report of the same. First thou must note, that after I had passed thirtie yeares & odde in England & Ireland, in all the which time fortune was so peruerse vnto me, that I was neuer able in all that time to buie me one suite of new apparel, but if I should recite all the manner of miseries which I héere in my Countrie haue passed, and that they were all written, this booke should be to little to holde them, for which cause I minde to passe them ouer with silence, and briefflie to touch some part of those which I passed beyond the seas, after I was preferred to the seruice of the right noble Prince Duke Cassemerus, by the right Worshipfull Sir Philip Sidney, with which foresayd Duke I passed out of England, and béeing forced for lacke of winde to ride at the blacke Nash in Fraunce, I went a land to Bolonia to sée the fortification thereof, and tarrying a land all night, the winde serued and the shippe made saile, which I espying in the morning, ran alongst the sandes, thinking to recouer Callis before them,

where I might get a bote for monie, but all in vaine, for before I came to Callis vnder a great chalke cleefe, ỹ tide had taken me that I could go no farther, nor yet be able to returne backward, nor to ſtand in ſafetie, for that the ſtones began to fall as the Sunne did riſe, being froſtie weather, and the Sunne ſhining cauſed the ſtones to fall, by meanes whereof I was forced to climbe ſo high as I could, and to leane my head into a hole, not once being ſo hardie as to ſet me downe. The tide being gone I came to Callis, where I met one maiſter Cradocke, a merchant of Stafford ſheere, who tolde mee it was verie daungerous paſſing by Grauelin, for that Monſieur Lamoate was there gouernour, & mortal enimie to Duke Caſſemerus, and would not let anie ſeruant of his paſſe, but I being not diſcouraged therewith, although my money was almoſt ſpent, nor being able to ſpeake one worde of anie language beſide mine owne, which I thinke you will account for great miſerie. Afterward being examined by Lamoate, I tolde him that I ſerued Maiſter Fouke Greyuell, who was come ouer to accompanie the Duke Caſſemerus, and he examining an olde Iriſh ſpie which hee there had, and finding in deed maiſter Fouke Greyuell to be in the ſhip he let me goe without anie harme, and by that time I came to Antwerpe my monie was all gone. Then was I forced to ride a couple of runawaie iades, for the which I was ſo badlie paide, that I went manie times ſupperleſſe to bed. It were too long heere to recite the iourney which I toke in hand to ſerue the king of Portingale, and the great tempeſts which I endured on the ſeas by the ſpace of xii. daies, riding then at the Downs, where I ſawe a number of goodlie ſhips torne in peeces and the men all drowned, which I thinke you wil allow for miſerie, for that I looked for death continually, which was worſe then a thouſand deaths, but afterward being

returned

returned into the hauen of Flushing, and seeing my horses to be spoiled, I left off that iourney, and went to the Scottish men, who had then beaten Monsieur Montanies folke out of Roselare, and hauing gotten entertainment vnder captaine Hammelton to serue as a common souldiour, I was shortly after taken prisoner by the Wallons of Vnreue, where I was most miserably imprisoned and hardly dealt withall, for that they toke my hose and doublet from me, leauing me nothing but a stincking sheepes skin about me, and the woll on it, and my cloke, of the which I made a long gabberdine with sleeues, like an olde popish priest: which thing is well knowen to little captaine Lucar, who was then marshall of the Englishmen in Tourney, and the first that I met withall of mine acquaintaunce, who did not a little maruell to see me attired in that sort, and to see me lame that I could scarcely go, by meanes of a wound which I had in my right thigh, when the said Wallons toke me prisoner: then he brought me to the lodging of captaine Bowes, who was then Liefetenant to captaine Ihon Cotten, who was a verie braue souldiour, and then lay maimed in the gest house of Valentia, where he was prisoner. But to the purpose, I had not a pennie in my purse to pay for my supper, and the saide captaine Bowes sent me to one Browne a victualler of his companie, or rather a hangman: I crie you mercie Maister Browne, I shoulde haue said, a Proforce with a Sergeant, to commaunde him to let me haue victualls, but neither he, nor his wife woulde as much as bidde mee welcome out of prison, nor make me drinke in their house, nor suffer me to lodge there on the grounde, but afterward being brought to a lodging by the said Sergeant, where I went supperlesse to bed. The next morning I went out with the souldiors, where I got something to eate, and vsing the same daily when they went

ſent, one captaine Morris chaunced to meete me, and hauing compaſſion on me, ſeeing I went with ſuch great paine to get my victualles, he ſtaied me at the porte of the towne, and ſaid I ſhould not go further in ſuch miſerable ſort, for that (quoth he) it is a ſhame that ſtrangers ſhould ſee vs ſo careleſſe, as to let anie man of our owne nation, ſterue with hunger, and for want of clothes to keepe him from colde: and preſently he went gathering ſo much money among the reſt of the Captaines and Gentlemen as did apparell me: And the reſt of the winter I paſſed with theſe foure vnfortunate enſignes (for ſo were they commonly called) that is to ſaie, captaine Floide, captaine Ellis, captaine Chatterton, and captaine Cotton. The ſpring of the yeare being come, Monſieur Lanow aſſembled the armie, and went to beſiege the caſtle of Englemeſter, where the armie was ouerthrowne, and he taken priſoner, and I moſt cruelly burned with pouder, where I had not ſo much as a ſhirt left vppon me, nor one pennie of money, neither anie place to go vnto for my releefe, which thou muſt account for great miſerie, conſidering of that ſodaine miſfortune to happen vnto me the morrowe, hauing gotten my ſelfe into ſo great credite with Mounſieur Lanow euen the night before, and al the reſt of my friendes and fellow ſouldiours ſpoiled, impriſoned, ſlaine, or burned as my ſelfe was, then was I (by good fortune) brought to the moſt horrible Spittle-houſe of Gaunt, and lying there in great miſerie, Colonell Cotton, as ſoone as hee heard thereof ſent me foure and twentie Florence by a Gentleman with this worde, that if I lacked anie thing, I ſhould ſend him worde, and hee would moſt willingly ſuſtaine my neede, but I well conſidering with my ſelfe the hardeneſſe of the man, and that hee ſent the ſame by reaſon of the great eſtimation, which

I had gotten with Monſieur Lanow, I doubting to trouble hym anye farther, made the meſſenger this anſweare.

Tell thy maiſter I can not lacke anie thing, for that hee hath giuen mée a kingdome: and ſo in deede this money was the onelie meane by the which GOD made preſerue mée, or otherwiſe the Surgeon woulde haue lette mée ſtarue, as hee did a number of other Engliſhemen for want of dreſſing, but I gaue hym almoſt all my money preſently, by meanes whereof hée toke the greater care, and was the more diligent, but Oh, I woulde to God that thou haddeſt ſéene with what cruelneſſe hée pulled awaie the coares of my burning before the fire was throughlie killed, onelie of purpoſe to make mée giue hym more money, to the end, hée might handle mée gentlie, I hauing no more money, was forced to endure his tyrannie, till ſuche time as a Gouldiour comming to ſée howe I did, lent mée a crowne, which I gaue to an olde woman of the houſe, cuerie night to ſteale mée ſome of the Surgeons medicines, by meanes whereof I had inough: and by diligent dreſſing my ſelfe therewith, I was ſone healed: Oh that thou haddeſt ſéene the miſerie that I endured the firſt fiftéene dayes, for that my braine was ſo troubled with the heate of the fire, that it ſeemed mée I ſawe Lions, dogges, and Diuelles comming vppon my bedde to rende mée in péeces. Then begamne I as earneſtly to praie as was poſſible for a wretched creature to do in this ſort: O Lord God I do confeſſe that I was not worthie of ſo great credite as thou haddeſt giuen mée with Monſieur Lanowe, therefore thou haſt punished mée in this, to the ende, that I ſhoulde knowe hereafter bothe howe to vſe mine owne credite more mildely, and the neede of others.

Alſo I beſeech thée, O Lord God, to pardon me mine offences, & take not my ſenſes from me vntil ſuch time as I make teſtimonie to the world how I honor vertue, thée, and thy holie lawes, and howe heartily I loue thy people, and my natiue countrie. Béeing ſomewhat recouered and importunating the people of the houſe for ſower milke to eate, my inward heat and burning was ſo great, then an olde villaine threatned me therefore ſaying, he would knocke me on the head, and caſt me into a pit, if I would not holde my peace: And vppon the ſame, an olde woman gaue me a meſſe of pottage with ſuch hearbs in them, that it caſt me into the bloudie flix, whereof I could not be healed in the ſpace of thrée yéers after: yea, and with the ſame they killed a number of good ſouldiours. But in the end, I being ſtrong and able to go about the houſe, to ſée how the reſt of my fellow ſouldiours did, which then lay there in great miſerie, the olde villaine came to me againe, and threatned mee as before, if I woulde not kéepe my bedde, which gréeued me more than all my other miſfortunes, for that I being of ſufficient ſtrength, not onelie to walke about the houſe, but alſo to go to the armie, had not one cloth to couer my bodie withall, but afterward, one Powell a victualler came to ſée how I and others did, I tolde to him my griefe and lacke, who cauſed preſently clothes to be prouided for me. And afterwarde comming to the armie which laie within foure Engliſh miles of Gaunt, where my bloudy flixe toke me ſo extréemly, that I was glad to go to Antwarp to ſeeke remedie, where, hauing ſpent all the money that the ſouldiours of the armie had giuen me, I came to Coronell Cotten, who commanded my diet to be paid for, and alſo my phyſicke in his lodging, but a cruell ſcolde that was then hoſteſſe of the ſame houſe (Coronell Cotten being gone) would not ſuffer me to tarrie there: then had I no ſuccour, but to lie

in

in Coronell Cottons ſtable vppon the ſtrawe, where, hauing not a pennie to buie me meate, a poore ſkinner that dreſſed Spaniſh leather, and had leaue of the ſaid Coronell Cotton to drie his leather in his yard, was to paſſe through, he when he ſawe me lie in ſuch great miſerie, for Gods ſake gaue me to eate, but it was ſo little and ſo bad, that I was within ſhort time neither able to go nor ſtand, as Maiſter Iohn Sentleger can well witneſſe, who was then there, and talked with me. Then I deſired the ſaid ſkinner, that he would bring me to the geſt houſe, where I lay tenne weekes before I was able to go. Being recouered, I was faine to beg a paire of olde ſhoes, for that I had none to put on my feet. Thence I went vnto Bruxels, where, before I could get entertainment among the Scottiſhmen, I was faine to laie my cloke to gage, to buy me meate: and afterward hauing gotten entertainment with one Captaine Tomſon, we came to Filford, where I paſſed the ſpace of ſixe moneths with great penurie, for that I was glad (being then winter) to ſleepe on the colde ground without a cloake: And alſo I would ſtand for ſintenel al the night for three halfepence a night: yea, ſo great was my neceſſitie, that I was forced to get olde iron, and ſell it to the Marriners, which though I carried it manie times on my backe three or foure Engliſh miles, yet profited I greatly thereby, for that I not onelie recouered my health, but alſo my ſtrength, in ſuch ſorte, that there was not anie man in all Coronell Stewards regiment able to ouer goe me, nor take more paines in anie worke than I was: moreouer, manie times I would breake or cleaue a whole waggons loade of houſe timber, to get my breakefaſt, and a pot of beere. With this extreame trauaile hauing recouered my ſelfe as before, I founde an inuention howe to make tenne or twelue waggon loades of woode or timber, as

before to fleete downe a little brooke, which did driue the milles of the towne: by ſelling the foreſaide timber to the victuallers, I got ſo much mony as loſed my cloke, and alſo bought me ſuch olde apparell of the ſouldiors, as not onelie kept me from the colde, but alſo was reaſonable decent. Hauing paſſed the winter in this moſt extreame miſerie, I ſaide on a daie in the court of Gard openly before all the ſouldiours: Nowe Clifford be of good heere, for before winter come againe, God ſhal not onlie deliuer thee of that neede to ſtand for ſentenell, but alſo thou ſhalt vndoubtedly haue credite with the Generall of an armie, and alſo haue ſeruauntes to attend thee: which woordes of me were vttered ſo vehemently, that the officers and Gentlemen were thereat aſtoniſhed, ſaying: Surely thou haſt deſerued it for thy conſtant enduring of paines and miſerie, which we neuer knewe anie man doe, with ſuch patience. But one corporal Coy onelie ſcorned me, who afterward before Bargas had beene hanged for ſtealing of lane if I would. But the Marſhall ſending me to ſee who had committed the fact, I galloping before the reſt which he ſent with mee, cauſed him to hide himſelfe, by meanes whereof I not onelie ſaued a verie good and tall ſouldiour, but alſo got great good will among all the reſt of the Scottiſhmen: Let not anie man therefore finde fault with this that I haue ſaide, vntill they haue tried the like that I haue done: or elſe ſet penne to paper to amend the ſame: which if they do, I ſhall moſt gladly embrace their doings: for the only thing I ſeeke, is the profite of my countrie. Thus by the waie, as touching the tenth part of the miſerie of my life.

A moſt excellent inuention to holde anie runawaie or harde mouthed horſe with the ſtregth of one of your fingers.

But to the purpoſe, thou ſhalt take a ring of iron and make it faſt to the one end of a ſtrappe of ſtrong leather which would be three foote of length, and two inches broade, to keepe the ring from turning. This done, make

make faſt the other end of the ſtrap to the point of your ſaddle tree behinde, which you ſhall eaſily doe in this ſorte: take firſt a ſtrappe of good leather, and naile it croſſewiſe vnder the point of the foreſaide tree. Hauing turned it ouer, and the ende forward, giue it an other naile on the out ſide of the tree. Then may you buckle your foreſaid peece of leather, with a ſtrong buckle thereon. That being done, make faſt a little thong of leather to the foreſaide ring ſo long as may come from the fore point of the tree of your ſaddle, to the buckle of his breaſt plate, by this meanes the foreſaide ſtrap and ring ſhall hang ſo cloſe vnder the couer of your ſaddle that a man ſhall hardly perceiue it: which being done, take a peece of a ſlippe or fine cord, make one ende thereof faſt to the foreſaide ring: and paſſe the other ende therof through the great eie of your brake or bit: And then paſſe it through the ring where the end of it was firſt made faſt. This being done, paſſe it yet once againe through the eie of your trench, noting, that there be no knottes in your corde, but that it run cleare, and make the end therof faſt to your ſaddle bowe: That done, get your horſe into ſome good ground as hath bene before taught: if it be a verie fierce and furious horſe, it ſhall not be amiſſe before you take his backe, to drawe the cord ſomething ſtraight, and make it faſt to the ſaddle bowe: This being done, go from him, and ſpeake to him, to the end he may trie himſelfe, neither ſhall it be amiſſe to ſtrike him with your rod, to the end that he may know himſelfe to be throughly maiſtred by this inuention. Hauing vſed him in this ſorte ſo much as reaſon requireth, (to whoſe rule I woulde haue thee haue a ſpeciall regarde in ſuch extremities as thoſe be) thou maieſt ſomewhat ſlacke thy cordes in ſuch ſort, that thou ſtraine not thy horſes head therewith: Then take his backe, and offer him gently to tread out

a ring in the ſelfe place: In doing whereof, I woulde haue you to ſpeake him faire, flattering, and vſing him gently, to the ende he may finde eaſe in obeying your will, and alſo, that he may perceiue the better wherefore he is corrected. And afterwarde when hée ſhall offer to run awaie, or malitiouſly refuſe to doe his leſſons, let your bridle go, and drawe the ende of your corde ſo much as ſhall be requiſite. By this meanes you may eaſily ſtaie your horſe from going awaie, euen with the ſtrength of one of your fingers: which being done, correct him ſharpely with the ſpurre on the contrarie ſhoulder, as before taught, and the rod alſo: that being done, ſlacke the corde, and offer hym his leſſon againe, and faile not that at euerie time he doth erre, to correct him in this order, by meanes whereof you ſhall in ſhorte time haue him as obedient as euer was ſcholler to his ſchoolemaiſter.

Kingdon.

But were it not better to ride him in ſome déep way, and hauing footmen with ſtaues, and burning ſtrawe in the endes thereof to put it in his noſe, or to runne him in the fielde till he be wearie?

Clifford.

It were verie good for a fole or madman.

Kingdon.

Wherfore? both learned & wiſemen haue ſo taught me.

Clifford.

I graunt them to be both learned and wiſe, but in teaching ſuch babies, they bewray their want of ſkill in this art, for conſider, I praie thée, howe that horſe is reformed, that the rider can not commaunde when it ſhall pleaſe him without the helpe of anie foteman: but by this laſt remedie, by me taught, thou ſhalt maiſter anie horſe without helpe, and make him that he ſhall not once dare offer to run awaie.

How

Hovv to remedie that Horſe that will turne but on the one hand.

Clifford.

YOV ſhall remedie him in this ſorte following, put a falſe raine on the ſide ẏ he wil not turne on, if you ride him with a bit, for if you ride him with a trench, you ſhall not nede of a falſe raine. This beeing done, turne him on that hand in ſome large ring and giue him at the leaſt tenne or twelue turnes at a time, then giue him two or three on the other hand, afterwarde, turne him on the other hande againe as before, for in obſeruing this order, and by holding your falſe or trench raine on that ſide ſo ſhort, that he can haue no libertie with his head, you ſhall quicklie remedie him if you giue him no ſhort nor narow turnes till he be perfect in the large, and that you bring him not ſodainlie from a large ring to a little, but as he is perfect in the large ring, ſo euer muſt you make him tread his ring leſſe & leſſe by a little at once til you haue brought him to tread his rings in as ſmall compaſſe as ſhall bee requiſite.

Kingdon.

But I haue knowen ſome horſes that when you would offer to turne them they will turne on the contrarie ſide in deſpite of your teeth.

Clifford.

Haue I not taught thee in the laſt Chapter with a ſtrap of leather to turne a runawaie horſe, by the which thou maiſt remedie this fault eaſilie, if thou wilt take heede thou turne him not too ſhort at the firſt, but orderlie and leaſurelie as path beene before taught.

Kingdon.

But I haue seene you to a horse of maister Throckmortons vse a more easier waie in my iudgement, and a farre more readier.

Clifford.

I praie you tell me in what order was that, for I haue now cleane forgotten it.

Kingdon.

I sawe you vnbuckle the raines of the brake & take the right raine thereof, and put it through a ring that was made fast to your saddle with a double peece of leather that went twice about the fore point of your saddle tree, and hauing past it through the foresayde ring, you did also put it through the eie of your brake, where the other end thereof was first made fast, and I sawe you with drawing the end thereof holde your horse in such sort that he was not able to goe awaie, but onelie to turne on the right hande, notwithstanding you dyd breake your rodde on him and spurred him till he bled, and afterward hauing losed the foresayd raine & buckled it in his former place, & then offered him his lesson, which he did before stubburnlie refuse to do, I then saw him do it with such willingnesse, that in my iudgement the horse made a double amends for his former fault, yea, and though you did prouoke him by riding him till hee was almost wearie, yet did he not dare once offer to goe awaie, at the which I did not a little merwaile, knowing him to be so stubburne a horse, and so notable a runawaie, that in the space of halfe a yere and more before your comming he stode still because no man was willing to ride him.

Clifford.

Thou sayest troth, thou maiest also in like manner take a cord of two fathome of length, passe the two ends thereof first through the greate eyes of your bit or brake, and afterward passe them through the two pat-

terell

terell buckles of your saddle, and then make fast the side of the cord to the eie of your braue, and when your horse doth offer to runne awaie you may drawe one side of the foresayd cordes, by meanes whereof you shall most easilie staie him as before, but in correcting him if hée turne so fast and many times that you cannot endure the same, then may you let that raine goe and pull the other, by meanes whereof you shall not onely correct your horse, but also be well able to endure his turning.

Hovve to remedie a horse that will lie downe in the water.

Clifford.

AT what instant he lies downe in the water, cause thrée or foure foot men to leape on his head and keepe him downe vnder water till he be almost drowned.

Hovv to correct the horse that will not carrie his head right.

Clifford.

HOlde your spurre close in his side till hée looke that waie, which when he doth, take awaie your spurre and make much of him, as soone as he forgets that correction see that you remember him as before till he leaue his fault.

Kingdon.

I haue knowen diuerse of those horses verie well reformed in their going, but afterward when you would giue them a managing turne, they will bowe their heads on the one side.

Clifford,

Clifford.

Take a ſtrap of leather with a button at each end cut full of ſlits, to the end you may ſhorten and lengthen it at your pleaſure, paſſe the one end therof through the eie of your cauiſon, bit, or brake, & the other end through the buckle of your fore girſe, and make it of ſuch length as your horſe may haue no libertie to turne his head. This is much better than to holde the contrarie raine of your cauiſon faſt, and a couple of theſe raines is the beſt remedie that euer I found for a weak necked horſe.

Howv to correct that horſe

that will not bring downe his moſell neither for bit nor muſroll, and being tied in with the martingale will continuallie ſtraine the ſame, and holde his noſe faſt on the muſroll, and his mouth on the bit, and will not yeeld for anie of them.

Clifford.

YOu ſhall cleeue the end of your martingale, and hauing made two buttons thereon, button it faſt to the two cheekes of your bit, and buckle it not too ſhort at the firſt, but after when your horſe is acquainted therewith, you may make it ſo ſhort as ſhal be requiſite to keepe his head in his due place.

Kingdon.

To what place of the cheeks of my bit ſhall I make this martingale faſt, for it ſeemeth me it were a greate deale better to make it faſt in the great eies of my bit?

Clifford.

That ſhall neuer correct your horſe, but as touching the making it faſt, if your bit cheekes be turned at the ends, you may put it into the ſame, but if they be not

turned

turned at the ends,then make faſt a ring to each cheeke thereof neere to the neather ends with a packe threed or ſhoomakers end,by putting it through ẏ one ring half a doſen times,and about the cheeke of the bit,and through the other ring alſo,as before.

Kingdon.

It ſeemeth to me that a ſhoomakers end or pack-threed ſhould not holde my horſe,and alſo I thinke this waie to be verie daungerous,for that my horſe ſhall learne to checke vpon the bit by reaſon that the curbe ſhall pinch him to ſore.

Clifford.

The doubt which thou haſt for breaking thy threed is more then needeth,for that he ſhall neuer breake being tied in this order,nor ẏ ſtrength of a good codpeece point, although he be verie hard of mouth. And as touching the vice of checking,I grant it to be verie daungerous if thou vſe it to a horſe that is verie tender of mouth, but thou muſt neuer vſe it but whē all other remedies faile thee,for if thou vſe it to a horſe as before,it ſhall worke to moſt excellent effect.

For the horſe that is verie tender of mouth.

GIue him a bit made with two ſmoth Oliues, or elſe in place of the Oliues, fill all the ieues with plaine ſmoth rings,and make him a curbe of leather in this ſort:Take away the three eſſes of the curbe from the rings thereof, then take a peece of leather ſome thing more then twice the length of the foreſayd Eſſes,then paſſe that foreſayde peece of leather thorough the ring ẏ ſhal remaine at the hooke or long Eſſ, that is faſtned on the right cheeke of the bit, then paſſe the other end thereof through one of the foreſaide three rings,that you faſten the curbe withall vpon the hooke,

and let the two ends of the foreſaid peece of leather meet on the out ſide turning from the horſes chin on the middle thereof, making it faſt with a cauſters end.

For the horſe that is ſome thing hard of mouth.

GIue him a plaine ſcatch or elſe two millions ioyned with a peece, and put a whole barre or trench therein full of plaine rings.

Kingdon.

But what if my horſe will not beare light vppon theſe two bits. Clifford.

Then take your former cannon which would haue his cheekes long and his curbe great, for I haue ſeene diuerſe horſes after they haue ben ridden with one of theſe foreſayd bits one moneth, and afterward giuing them their Cannon they haue become a great deale lighter thereon then at the firſt.

Kingdon.

But diuerſe ſkilfull horſe men are of the opinion, that it is not good to chaunge a horſes bridle if he be once well bitted.

Clifford.

I graunt, neither would I wiſh you to change your cannon in anie caſe ſo long as it is poſſible to gouerne your horſe with him, but I haue found diuerſe horſes ẏ could hardlie be gouerned with the cannon by reaſon of the hardneſſe of their mouths, but by changing them from the canon to one of the foreſaid bits, and afterward to the canon, they become ſo light therevpon in proceſſe of time, that I haue bene able to gouerne them vppon a canon ſo eaſilie, as though they had neuer beene hard mouthed. Kingdon.

Then it ſhould ſeeme that often chaanging a horſes bit, is good to him that is hard of mouth.

Clifford,

Clifford.

Yea, if thou chaunge him vpon one of the foreſayde three bits, and that thou take heede thou giue him not anie other rough bit: thou maiſt alſo vſe the ſcatch with ỳ vplet mouth or the whole port with two round rowles which would not be rough nor great, and fill the reſt of the ieue with ſmoth playing rings on the out ſide therof. Theſe aforenamed bits are ſufficient to frame anie horſe, of what nature or diſpoſition ſo euer he be of, not hauing his mouth marred before with euill riding and rough bits, if ſo be thou haue the true art of riding, in the which if thou be ignoraunt, neither ſhall all the dronken faſhions which thou maiſt ſee in Flaunders, nor the new fangles or light inuentions which thou mayeſt alſo ſee in Paris, nor all the moderate faſhions inuented by the diſcreet Italians profit thee anie thing.

The end of the ſecond booke.

The third booke of the keepers Office.

The firſt Chapter of the keepers Office.

Kingdon.

YOu haue taught me ſufficiently as touching the art of riding, now I praie you let it not be grieuous vnto you to teach me after my horſe is ridden, how and in what order I ſhal walke and dreſſe him, to the end that he may not take colde, for that I haue often heard you ſaie, that you account your horſe halfe marred after that he hath once taken an extreame cold, for that he ſhall be the more ſubiect not onlie to take that, but alſo moſt perilous diſeaſes, & death may happen vnto him by meanes of extreme heat & cold.

Clifford.

Thy horſe being ridden, cauſe him to be walked in ỹ ſame place where thou geueſt him ſome leſſon in a great ring, or right forth, with a man on his back till he be thorough colde.

Kingdon.

Why ſhall I walke my horſe with a man on his back, and not in my hand, and alſo why ſhal I walke him in a ring?

Clifford.

By walking him in a ring thou maieſt ſée him as ỹ rideſt thy other horſes by him. Alſo the man ỹ ſhall ride him being ignorant how to vſe his hand vpon the bridle, ſhal then haue no néd to check him with ỹ bit, for he being well acquainted with that path, will goe himſelfe: & as touching thy walking of him in thy hand, it is very dangerous, for ỹ the weather being verie cold ỹ aire wil vtterly ſpoile thy horſe, which can haue no power on him ſo long as he is going with a man on his backe. Alſo if your horſe be ſtubburne or giuen to reare on end, or leap on his képer with his fore féte, it ſhal be very perillous to walk ſuch horſes in your hand, not onely in reſpect of the képer, but alſo of ỹ horſe, who hauing once beaten his képer or broken frō him, he ſhall thereby become ſo ſtubburne, ỹ no man ſhall be able to lead him without great danger: of the which horſes I haue had good experience in Flanders with Monſieur Villiers, & with Monſieur De la Roſhpo, one of them being marſhal of ỹ camp as afore-ſaid, & the other general of ỹ Infancie, ỹ army thē being at Eclow, ỹ Erle De la Roſhpo had a bay horſe which ſlew two of his grooms, wherwith he became ſo cruell & fierce not only in biting & ſtriking, but with rearing on end, ỹ he would daſh out their braines and break their bones whoſoeuer he could take hold on. Alſo Monſieur Villiers had a bay horſe named Souldier, which horſe when I had ridden him one daie, & lighted to make much of him, (which hath alwaies ben my cōmon vſe when my horſe

hath done wel) the horſe did leape vpon me, & rend almoſt all my clothes of my backe, & bit off my fore finger, to my great griefe, & feare of the beholders, who all ran awaie for feare of the furie of the horſe, which was ſo great, that not one of them was ſo hardie as once to help me.

Kingdon.

I pray you before I go anie further, teach me howe I may without perill keepe or dreſſe any ſuch horſe, for that you told me Monſieur Villiers gaue two horſes to Mõſieur de la Roſhpo for the ſame horſe, and afterward hauing both the foreſaide ill conditioned horſes, vnder your hands, the ſpace of three yeares you had neuer anie greeme hurt, nor your ſelfe put in hazard with either of them, which can hardly ſincke into my head, for that an horſe beginning to bite and leape on his keeper with his forefeete, is hardly or neuer to be reformed.

Clifford.

I graunt they are not to be reformed, but thou ſhalt eaſily maiſter them with theſe inuẽtions here folowing, in ſuch ſort, that a boy of fiftene yeres of age, may dreſſe them, ſaddle them, bridle them, leade them in the hand, leape on them, and light from them, without anie perill, either to keeper or rider. Firſt, when you woulde bridle your horſe, you muſt make faſt a ſtrong cord to the noſe-band of his collar in this ſort: Goe to the horſe on the one ſide of the barre, and drawe his head to you ſo farre as the contrarie raine will giue you leaue, then make faſt the forenamed cord, which you may eaſily do without anie daunger, then tie him therewith to the racke, and then you may bridle him with your watering bit, or falſe trench, which falſe trench is a moſt neceſſarie thing for ſuch an horſe, for that he being brideled therewith, you may not onelie dreſſe your horſe without danger, but alſo if occaſion ſerue, you may put on your bridle without danger, and let the trench remaine

on his head, noting, that you leaue the rains of the foresaid trench, so long as you may tie him therewith to the two postes of his roome being turned about.

Kingdon.

I graunt that I may thus keepe mine horse from biting me, but what shal I do that he strike me not with his forefeete, whiles I thus bridle him?

Clifford.

If he be so froward that he will not let thee handle his head, then take a good whip and whip him well, and hauing so whipped him, offer to touch him, as before, which if he refuse, then whip him againe: obserue this order so long till he be glad to let you handle his mouth, which when he will doe, make much of him, and bridle him, in suffering whereof, see that thou vse him gently, if he offer to bite thy hand, take a left hand gantlet and dash him in the mouth when he offers to bite thine hand: that being done, taken long cudgell, and begin to touch him therewith vpon his hinder legges, and if he strike, whip him, as before, so long till ye endure to haue both his legges and feete easily rubbed and touched with the same: then begin to rubbe him gently with your hands, and after put foure pasturns on his feete, and let a cord passe on ech side from the hind foot to the fore foot, which would be of a sufficient length: by this means may you dresse your horse, saddle, and bridle him without danger either of biting, or striking, and also your horse may both lie downe, & rise with the same so easily, as though he had nothing on: for I haue alwaies vsed in the camp, when I must make my stable in a barne or great house, where I had no bars betwixt them to tie all their legs with side langalls made of great haie roapes, which I did alwaies carrie with me for that purpose.

Kingdon.

I pray you teach me what those side langals are, for I know not what you meane therby, for that I haue neuer

seene

ſéene any of them. Clifford.

In the noꝛth part of England they are cõmon, & alſo in Scotland, and it is made in this ſoꝛt: firſt take a péece of a coꝛd of fiue fwt of length, and make a knot on ech ende thereof, then paſſe the ſaid knot thꝛough the two eies of your coꝛd, which muſt be on ẏ ends of ẏ ſame foꝛ ẏ purpoſe: thẽ may you ſhift your knot backward oꝛ foꝛward, ſo long til you make the two ends therof fit foꝛ your hoꝛſes féet: then put one on his hind fwte, the other on his foꝛefwt, noting, that daily you change the foꝛeſaid langal, putting it one daie on ẏ one ſide, & another day on the other foꝛ feare of galling him, it ſhal not be amis at the firſt to line it with cotton oꝛ cloth, & after he is acquainted therwith, he wil not hurt himſelfe, though you make it of rough oꝛ hard coꝛd. I haue alſo ſéene the Albanians vſe a much moꝛe eaſier faſhion, foꝛ ẏ euerie kéeper may make it himſelfe: Cut a péece of coꝛd of ſuch length as may come frõ the hinder fwt to ẏ foꝛefwt of your hoꝛſe, a knot being made on ech end therof: then take two péces of ſmal coꝛd, double thẽ, & make a great one, make knots vpon both ends thereof, & let it be of ſuch length as it may méet iuſt about ẏ hoꝛſes féet, as your paſturn doth: then with a great cudgel ſharped at the end opẽ the foꝛenamed great coꝛd, & paſſe the ſmall coꝛd thꝛough the ſame behind the knot, and when you ſhal put it on your hoꝛſe, wind the loup that wil remaine of your foꝛeſaide ſmall double coꝛd til you make ẏ end therof ſo ſtrait, ẏ you can no moꝛe but paſſe ẏ foꝛenamed knot: the turning wil kéep it ſo cloſe, that it is not poſſible foꝛ your hoꝛſe to vndo the ſame. Kingdon.

I grant that this foꝛenamed langall is very good to let mine hoꝛſe that he ſhall not ſtrike his kéeper with his foꝛe oꝛ hinder féete, noꝛ to leape into his manger, noꝛ hang himſelfe in his halter, noꝛ to ſtrike any other hoꝛſe: but yet I haue ſéene diuers hoꝛſes will

turne

turne their tailes and dung in their fellowes rome, by meanes whereof the other horſe coulde not lie cleane, which is a filthie thing: therefore I pray you ſhewe me what I ſhall do to keepe him right in his rome.

Clifford.

Take the ſaid langall from his forefeete, and tie a peece of cord therevnto: then make an hole in his taile tree, or elſe muſt you driue a ſtake into the ground, and make faſt the langall thereto. This is not onelie good to holde your horſe right in his rome, but alſo it is ſufficient to keepe him from ſtriking his fellowes, and to let him from leaping into the manger, and hanging himſelfe in his halter.

Kingdon.

How ſhall I leade ſuch a diuelliſh horſe, when I ſhal bring him forth to the rider, and how ſhall I take his backe, that he hurt neither him nor me?

Clifford.

Take a cudgell of three or foure foote of length, make an holow in each end thereof, then ſowe a buckle vpon a peece of leather, a ſpanne long, with the which thou muſt buckle the one ende of thy ſtaffe to the eie of thy bit, and paſſe a cord through the other end, and make it ſo faſt as you may hold your horſe therewith.

Kingdon.

I graunt that this is ſufficient to holde anie horſe if he be neuer ſo diueliſh that he cannot bite me: but what ſhall I doe that hee leape not on me with his forefoote?

Clifford.

Take a peece of ſtrong leather hunger, two inches broad, twe foote and a quarter of length, or two foote and an halfe, if your horſe be verie great, then make faſt to ech end thereof, a round ring of yron, ſo big as ſhall be requiſite to ſerue the foreſaide peece of leather, then

cut

cut two other peeces of leather longer of like breadth, and let one of them be two foote of length, and the other two foote and an halfe, and make them fast at the one end in the foresaid ring, cut the points of the two foresaid peeces of leather so narrow, that you may set a stirrop leather buckle on the shorter, and that the other end may easily passe the foresaid buckle, whē it must be made fast. And when you would leade forth your horse, put one of your foresaid peeces of leather about his foreleg, and then passe the point thereof through the great ring, and draw it close to his leg, and put the other end thereof about his hinder leg of the same side through the other ring, and drawe it close as before, which being done, buckle the two endes thereof fast with the saide buckle. Thus may you leade your horse with your staffe and side langall, get vpon him, and light from him, and the rider being vp, you may lose awaie your staffe, and also losing your buckle of the foresaide side langall, it will flee all lose, without lifting vp one foot of the horse, either when you put it on or take it off. With this inuention haue I neuer failed to maister anie horse, how diuelish soeuer he was, and by continuall vsing of the same, I haue made them, that being in seruice, I might at my pleasure get vp or downe, hauing one to staie him by the head while I did alight on the one side, and make an other leape vp on the other side at the same instant. Thou maiest also make two holow peeces of leather, much like vnto two great bolles, to the which thou maiest fasten a litle strap of leather, of such length, that it being put ouer the horses head, in the place of the headstall, the two forenamed bolles may fall iust ouer the horses eies. Then take an other peece of leather of such length as the horses forehead is of breadth, and make it fast to the fore part of the two forenamed bolles, and make other two straps fast, so that you buckle them vnder the horses iawes

or throat, and before his rider get vppe, make the same fast that he can not see, and after he is mounted, take it away, and when he hath ridden him and wil alight, you must put it on as before, vntill such time as you haue brought him into the stable, and this is a very good way, but nothing comparable to the first, for that with the one he is but deceiued, but with the other he is ouer maistred.

Hovv to teach a horſe to lie downe flat vpon his bellie, that he ſhal not riſe till you bid him.

Kingdon.

I Haue forgotten one thing, which aboue all things I haue desired to learne, that is, to teach a horse to lie downe close vppon his bellie, for that it is not onelie good in seruice when a man is armed, but also it is excellent when you are hurt or maimed, and haue not anie bodie to helpe you vp, also it is good when you will lay horsemen in an ambuskado, I haue long desired that you should teach me the same, for that at sir Ihon Tracies in Glouceſter shire you did once learne a horse to lie downe in the space of halfe an houre, and so that he neuer forgote the same, but would at all times doe it when his rider should take his backe verie gently, euen with the proffering of your hand to his legges, by vsing this voice: Couch, couch.

Clifford.

You shall teach your horse to lie downe in this sort, first shake litter inough vnder him, and tread it down or beate it fast, so as the horse may not driue it vppon heapes with his feete, then put on his head a watring bit, and hauing tide him with two cordes to the postes

of his rome, ſo low that he may eaſily put his head to the ground, then ſhall you put a paire of ſoft paſturnes, the one on his hinder foote, and the other on his foꝛe foot on the further ſide, and let the coꝛd go betwixt them of a ſufficient length, to kæpe him that he ſhal not reare, then may you tie a long coꝛde to the foote of your manger on the right ſide of your hoꝛſe, and make the other end faſt to the paſturne of his right hinder foot, then ſhal you put a third paſturne on his nære foꝛe foote: and hauing paſſed a ſurcingle about his bodie, and through the foꝛeſaid paſturne, then ſhall you buckle vp his nære foote ſo neare his bellie as you ſhall thinke neceſſarie, & you muſt ſee that the buckle lie nære to the midle of the hoꝛſes backe, to the end that when he is laid downe, you may eaſily looſe ẏ ſurcingle: hauing thus tied your hoꝛſe, you ſhall beginne to ſtrike him faire and ſoftly with a little cudgel vpon his right legge oꝛ ſhinne beneath his knée with your right hand, and leane your right ſhoulder cloſe to the hoꝛſe his left ſhoulder, and with your left hand pull downe his head as hard as you can, ſpeaking to him gently, ſaying to him, couch, couch, and if he pꝛoffer as though he would lie downe, make much of him, and let him reſt a while, then beginne to beate him ſoftly againe till he lie downe. Thus may you teach anie young hoꝛſe to lie downe in the ſpace of thꝛée houres, ſo that with a little exerciſe the firſt and ſecond day you ſhall make him ſo perfect, that he ſhal lie downe at the firſt time that you pꝛofer your rod to his foꝛelegs: But if you will teach an olde hoꝛſe to lie downe that is ſtubborne and froward of nature, then muſt you put a ſharp pꝛicke in the end of your foꝛeſaid cudgell, and let it not exceede the length of a wheate coꝛne without the cudgel, and when with ſoft ſtriking you can not make him lie downe, then may you pꝛicke him in the legge with the foꝛeſaid pꝛicke, and you ſhal ſée him pꝛeſently fall down

vpon his knées, you ſée that he will not lie downe with his hinder partes, then holde the bridle faſt, and holde your ſhoulder cloſe to the horſe, then ſhal you ſtrike him faire and ſoftly vpon the elbow of his fore left legge, ſo long til you make him lie down with his hinder parts, which when he doth, vnbuckle your ſurcingle, take off his bridle, and giue him graſſe or prouender to eate, and flatter him, and make much of him, but if he ſtart vpps ſodainely, before you would haue him, then it ſhall be good to giue him two or three ſtrokes with your rod, and preſently to force him to lie downe, as at the firſt, but if he riſe not till you woulde haue him, then make marueluous much of him, and giue him ſuch things to eate as he moſt deſireth, and when you haue made him riſe, claw and rub him, and proffer it him no more in the ſpace of an houre. In this order haue I neuer failed to make anie horſe lie down at my pleaſure, of what age, nature, or diſpoſition ſoeuer he was.

Kingdon.

But what if my horſe wil ſtart vp ſodainely when I would take his backe in the field.

Clifford.

Then take him faſt by the cheéke of the bridle with your left hand, and whip him wel with your right hand behind the ſaddle, and cauſe him to lie downe preſently, and by this meanes you ſhal reforme him.

Of a horſe that yarketh behinde in his gallopping.

AT euerie time he yarketh in his gallopping, whip him well behinde vpon his flancke, as néere his coddes as is poſſible, and ſo continue the correction as often as the horſe ſhall make this fault, thus you ſhall quickly recouer him.

Kingdon.

Kingdon.

But I did demaund of you in the beginning how I ſhould dreſſe mine horſe after that he was ridden, therefore I praie you teach me what order I ſhall obſerue therin.

Clifford.

That was wel remembred of thée, I giue thée thanks, for I had almoſt forgotten that, but now I ſhall moſt willinglie ſhew thée of all the waies that I tried which is beſt. Thine horſe béeing walked as before till hée bée thorow colde, thou ſhalt ſhake litter inough vnder him, with the which thou muſt rub his legges well, and alſo betwixt his fore bowes and hinder legges, that béeing done, vnbridle him, and rubbe his head well, and alſo his necke and breſt, then may you giue him ſome hay or ſtrawe to eate.

Kingdon.

But were it not good to let him ſtand halfe an houre on the bit, and not to rubbe his legges till he be thorow colde and drie, and alſo to take off his ſaddle and to put a cloth on him, and alſo ſtuffe him rounde about with ſtrawe?

Clifford.

As touching thy firſt demaund, I anſwere, not with opinion, but with experience, that it is much better, thy horſe being colde, as hath béene before taught, to vnbridle him and let him eate his meate, than to ſtand ſtill vpon the bit. And as touching thy ſecond demand, I anſwere, it is naught to let thine horſe ſtand vnrubbed, for that the mire drying on his legges, ſhall not onelie make him ſtiffe, but alſo cauſe his ſkinne to be ſo drie that it will chap, and breéde ſcabbie and mouldie héeles: yea, I doe aſſure thée I haue thoroughlie tried this waie, but I could neuer find anie ſo good, as to rub mine horſe till he be drie, & as touching ỳ vnſadling of him, I haue

alſo tried it by the ſpace of tenne yeares together, in all which time I could neuer be without the horſeleeches helpe, but in twelue yeares that I haue obſerued this order heere following, I haue not had need of the horſeleech to drench my horſe at anie time for anie diſeaſe comming of colde, no nor ſeldome of anie other. Take heed thou vnſaddle him not, nor ſo much as ſlacke one of his girſes, but hauing rubbed him well, thou ſhalt couer him with a ſingle cloth, making the corners thereof faſt vnder his girſes, and take heede thou neuer giue him water nor prouender vntill ſuch time as thou haſt dined, although thou ride him earlie in the morning, but if it be in winter, put a good handfull of haie in it, to the end it may hinder him and make him drinke leaſurelie, which alſo ſhall ſome thing abate the coldneſſe of the water. And it ſhall not be amiſſe in colde and extreame wether to let thy horſe drinke but halfe his fil, and often times to beate him awaie, ſuffering him to take but a little and a little at once, by meanes whereof he ſhall not ſodainlie cole his ſtomacke wherwith he might fall into ſome extreame feauer, and when thou haſt done, giue him his wet haie in the manger to eate.

Kingdon.

I ſhall marre my horſe if I let him not drinke his fill?

Clifford.

Thou ſhalt not hurt him I warrant thee, for that at night thou mayeſt giue him inough without anie daunger.

Kingdon.

But at what time I praie you ſhall I vnſaddle him and dreſſe him.

Clifford.

By that that I haue ſayd, I would haue taught thee ỹ after thou haſt watered thy horſe thou ſhalt firſt rub well

well his head,and then his bodie and legges,firſt with ſtrawe and then with haire cloth, that done,combe his mane and put on his coller, which thou muſt alwayes take off when thou rubbeſt his head,ỹ being done, giue him his prouender,and vnſaddle him not till night that the dores & windowes of the ſtable be ſhut,then mayeſt thou currie and dreſſe him without anie danger:By obſeruing this order & giuing my horſe fenegreke in his Dates after his iourney,and not letting him reſt,but by walking him abroad euerie daie or euerie other day eaſilie & ſoftlie without heating him,I haue in three yeres and three moneths,wherein I had charge of Monſieur Villiers horſes, not giuen one drench or medicine to ſo much as one of them for anie diſeaſe.

Kingdon.

But how long and how many daies ſhall I giue my horſe his fenegreke,& ſhall it not be requiſite for me to beate it into pouder?

Clifford.

No,but in the ſame ſort that thou buieſt it of the Pothecarie,ſo giue it vnto thy horſe, & let him eate thereof as often as thou giueſt him prouender, for the ſpace of fifténe daies at the leaſt.

Kingdon.

But I haue knowen ſome horſes when you put fenegreke in his Dates he will not eate it.

Clifford.

Thou mayſt eaſilie remedie that by letting him faſt till he be verie hungrie, and by giuing him a little at once till he be throughlie acquainted therewith, which when he is,and will eate it well,then mayeſt thou giue him thy handfull at a time as before.

What

VVhat vvater is beſt for an Horſe to drinke.

Kingdon.

I Praie you teach me what water is beſt to giue mine horſe to drinke, for that ſome are of opinion, that ſtanding water will fat a horſe much more then the riuer or running water.

Clifford.

But if thou wouldeſt follow my counſell, thou ſhouldeſt leaue all their opinions and hearken vnto reaſon, which I am ſure will teach thee, that the purer the water is, the more wholeſome for thy horſe it is, & the more healthier ſhall he be, yea, I would not aduiſe thee to giue thine horſe at anie time anie ſuch water as thou wouldeſt not willinglie drinke thy ſelfe: for by ſeeking to fat thy horſe with filthie ſtanding water, thou ſhalt breede him full of diſeaſes, of the which thing I haue had good experience at ſir Iohn Tracies in Glouceſter ſheere, where watering my horſes at a ſtanding moate (for that the horſe keepers were ſo lazie that they would not goe to a faire brooke that dyd runne a little farther off) by meanes thereof I had alwayes ſome of my horſes ſicke or diſeaſed.

Of the horſes forrage and prouender.

Kingdon.

I Beſeech you ſhew me what forrage and prouender is beſt for mine horſe to eat, and what quantitie of prouender is ſufficient.

Clifford.

Clifford.

As touching thy firſt demaund, thou muſt giue him haie and all kinde of ſtrawe that he will eate, ſeeing alwaies that they be ſweete and not mouldie nor foiſtie, noting alſo, ỹ what forrage ſo euer you giue your horſe, you duſt it well with your handes or forke before you giue it vnto him, and that you giue it him in a ſmall quantitie at once, to the end he may eate it cleane, for by filling your racke alwaies full of haie or ſtrawe before your horſe, you ſhall make him to loath the ſame, whereas if you giue it him by handfulles, he ſhall eate with greate appetite; and neither waſt the forrage nor loath his ſtomacke.

Kingdon.

I graunt I may feede my horſe thus all the daie, but what ſhall I doe at night?

Clifford.

Fill thy racke, and the nert morrow ſo much as remaines in it, pul it out and ſtrawe it in the manger before thy horſes, if it be but a little; if it be much, take the moſt parte thereof alwaie: bee ſure thou make cleane thy racke once a daie in the ſame ſorte, and alſo let thine horſes ſtand two houres at the leaſt, without anie meate before them. And as touching his prouender, twelue times as much Dates as you can take vp in your two handes is ſufficient to giue him a daie, feeding him therewith in this ſorte, foure after water in the morning, as many after dinner, & the reſt at night.

Kingdon.

I haue ſeene diuerſe men would giue their horſes foure handfulls in the morning and eight at night.

Clifford.

I graunt that thou haſt ſeene it, & ſo haue I, and alſo haue proued it, for I haue made mine horſes therewith not onlie take ỹ laſke, but it hath paſſed whole through

euen as they did eate it. And I haue also so cloied or glutted diuerse horses therewith, that they haue vtterly abhorred their prouender: Therefore I would wish you to giue your horse his prouender often, and by little at once.

Kingdon.

But I haue knowen diuerse worshipfull men in England giue their horses but eight handfulles a daie, that is to saie, foure in the morning and foure at night.

Clifford.

I graunt that diuerse doth so, and a number of horses will like better therewith than if you gaue them twelue, but you must haue a speciall regard that when your horse eates good haie, you giue him a quarter the lesse prouender then when hee eates strawe, & also that you giue him more when hee is trauailed than when he standes still, for when hee rests, verie little prouender will serue, noting aboue all thinges, that what prouender so euer your horse eates, that you giue him rather halfe a pecke too little then one graine too much, for there is not a more vile thing then to giue an horse too much prouender. Beanes or pease mingled with bran is also verie good prouender.

Kingdon.

What saie you of horse bread?

Clifford.

That is good to trauaile with, but I neuer saw anie beyond the seas, neither could I finde anie man or woman there that could make it.

Kingdon.

How shall I prepare mine horse, to trauaile a iourney, and what saddle and bridle is best, and also with what shoes shall I shoe mine horse?

Clifford.

First, as touching thy saddle and bridle, let it bee as light

light as may be, & as touching the ſhoes of thine horſe, let them alſo be light, and verie narrow of webbe with two calcons, and ſee that you make your ſhoe ſomewhat thicke in the toe and alſo ſtrong, riſing with a welt or creaſt, round in the edge thereof, and hollow your ſhoe verie little, and take hæde that you make it ſomewhat ſtraight ſo farre as your nailes goe, and from the talent naile backward let your ſhoe appeare a little without the houe, otherwiſe it will ſinke into his hæles, that it ſhall not onelie lame your horſe, but alſo ſpoile his hæls that he ſhall therewith become flat ſoted. And as touching the paring of his ſote, cut awaie as little as is poſſible at the hæles, but pare him wel from the quarter or the talent naile forward to the toe, and that you alſo not onelie in paring fauour the hæle of the fore ſote ſo much as is poſſible, and the toe on the hinder ſote, for I neuer ſawe horſe pricked at the toe on the fore ſote, nor in the hæle of the hinder ſote.

Kingdon.

But how ſhall I dict and dreſſe mine horſe in the morning?

Clifford.

Two houres or an houre and a halfe at the leaſt before you will ride, ſee that you let him drinke, that done, let him eate hay the ſpace of halfe an houre, then giue him his prouender, which being eaten, you may bridle him & let him ſtand till you be readie to take his backe, and take hæde you ride him verie gentlie for the ſpace of three or foure miles, in which time thy horſes bellie and ſtomacke will beginne to be ſomewhat aſwaged, then maye you mende your paſe, remembring alwaies that when you come to anie hill you light and leade him, for it is a great refreſhing to your horſe, and alſo to your owne legges, which a number of lazie lubbers doe little conſider, ſuch as doe hang

on their horſes backes both vp hill and dowue hill till they be tired, and themſelues when they alight, ſo benummed & crooked, that they can ſcarcelie ſtand. Thus much I haue digreſſed, but to the purpoſe. A mile before you come to your baiting place, ſée that you ride faire & ſoftlie, to the end he may be colde when he comes to his baite, then when you come to the ſtable, the firſt thing you doe, ſhake litter inough vnder him, that being done, vnbridle him & giue him a bottle of haie to eate, which being eaten, you may giue him his prouender, and ſée that you cauſe him to be wel rubbed, and eſpeciallie betwéene his fore legges for feare of pliſhing or galling, and it ſhall not be amiſſe if your horſe begin to heat betwéene his fore bowes, to waſh him at his firſt comming into the ſtable with a paile ful of colde water, and when it is throughdrie, to greaſe it with ſalt butter, béeing firſt made ſcalding hot, and at night when you come to your lodging dreſſe your horſe as before at your baite, and let him not drinke till he be throughcolde, & that he haue eaten haie one houre at the leaſt, and if he be hot and verie fat, it ſhall be verie good to giue him his water at thrée or foure times, by which meanes you ſhal make him drinke inough without anie daunger. And ſée that you giue him not his prouender in half an houre after he hath drunke, which would be foure times your two handfulls of Dates, or beanes and bran, or peaſon and bran, or bread, if it may be had, all which prouender is verie good, but bread is the beſt, & oates is the worſt to trauaile withal, taking good héed, ý you giue his night prouender at twice, which is much better than to giue it him all at once, and in the morning giue him not ſo much as at night, and that you vnſaddle him not till hée be throughlie drie and wel dreſſed on all his bodie. But if you come in ſo late as your horſe cannot be drie before bed time, then may you after you haue ſupped, ſée

your

your horſe well dreſſed, take off his ſaddle, and lay a cloth on him, which would not be too hote in anie caſe, nor too much ſtraw ſuffer vnder it, for feare of kéeping your horſe too hote, which ſhall almoſt doe him ſo much hurt as though he ſtode without anie, and it ſhall take awaie his ſtomacke, and make him ſo faint that he cannot be able to eate his meate, nor to trauell, & being loſed out of that foreſaid nédeleſſe heate, he ſhall be in great danger to take an extreame cold.

Kingdon.

Shal foure handfulls of prouender be inough to giue mine horſe at night when I trauell?

Clifford.

Yea, you may giue him eight handfulles, but you muſt giue it him at twice, and that is ſufficient for any horſe for his night prouender, and to ſome it is a greate deale too much, therefore thou muſt take good héede, that thou know wel thy horſes eating, before thou appoint what quantitie of prouender he ſhal haue, and then meaſure him accordingly, for I haue found ſome horſes that would not eate thrée handfulls, which I haue made to eate verie well in this order following. I haue giuen him but two handfulls a daie, that is to ſaie, one in the morning, and an other at night after his water, and alſo I haue cauſed his keeper to ride him once a daie to the water, and afterward to ride him halfe an houre, ſometimes on his paſe, and ſometimes on his trot: with this exerciſe and ſharp diet, I haue in ſhort ſpace made mine horſe ſo ſtrong of ſtomacke, that he woulde eate eight handfulles a daie, and more if he could haue had it, which thing thou muſt obſerue as a generall rule, that thou giue him rather too little than too much, as hath béene before taught.

Of making of your Stable.

Kingdon.

SIth that now we haue in hand the keeping of horſes, I woulde deſire you firſt to ſhew me how I ſhould make my ſtable.

Clifford.

As touching your ſtable, I woulde haue you build it in a good aire, and that the doores and windowes be made in ſuch ſort as you may keep your horſes warme or cold at your pleaſure, and as ſhall be needefull for the ſeaſon of the yeare. For you muſt note, that in a corrupt aire, neither man nor beaſt can long continue ſound, neither in a colde aire, of the which thing you may haue a very familiar example in your ſelfe, and I woulde haue you diligently to note & well to conſider hereof, as, what good your meate and drinke ſhall doe you, when you in eating the ſame, and ſleeping, ſhall ſuffer colde.

Kingdon.

How ſhould my horſes be to colde in an houſe, for you may ſee that thoſe horſes that go abroad, neuer take harme, by meanes of the aire, and alſo if I keepe mine horſe warme, he ſhalbe the leſſe able to indure cold when he comes abroad.

Clifford.

Thou haſt made a ſtrong reaſon: doſt not thou know that the horſe which goes abroad wil not reſt 6. hours in 24. and that thereby he cannot take anie harme, for that he is continually exerciſed, and that moderately, and not being driuen into anie heate: but thy horſe ſtanding in the ſtable, is manie times driuen into extreame great heates, and at other times ſtandeth ſtil without exerciſe, the lacke whereof is the reaſon that he can not endure the aire of his ſtable to be ſo colde by the tenth part, as if he went abroad, yea I neuer in all my life could keepe my

my horſes ſound in a colde ſtable, yet I would aduiſe you to take good heed that it be not ſo warme on the other ſide that your horſes therewith ſhal ſweat, but that you vſe the golden meane betwixt theſe two extremes which is, that your horſe be not ſo hote to make him ſweat, nor ſo cold that his haire ſtand vpright vpon his buttockes or ſtare, which is a moſt manifeſt ſigne of cold.

Kingdon.

I do confeſſe that it is good to keep an horſe in a temperate aire, but I would faine know how I ſhal make my racke and manger, and how I ſhall plancke my ſtable, and diuide the romes thereof.

Clifford.

Firſt as touching your manger, you may make it of three fashions: the firſt is, as we commonly vſe them in England, which ſerueth to no other vſe, but for them to eate their prouender in, and the haie which they ſcatter or let fall when they eate out of the racke: the ſecond faſhion ſerueth both for prouender and forrage, for that it is made higher, deeper, and wider by a great deale than our common manger is, and alſo it is made with ſtaues or laths, nailed on the bottome, in ſuch ſorte, that it may holde the forage, and let the duſt fall through: and alſo you may make a manger for euerie couple of horſes of three foote long, with a partition in the middle thereof placed iuſt betwixt your horſes, ſo as they may bothe reach their prouender in the ſame, and let the partition thereof ſtand iuſt with the end of the barre that is betwixt your horſes, ſo as the one halfe may be in the one rome, and the other halfe in the other. Thus ſhal your horſe haue place inough for his forrage, without being letted with the manger: note herewith, that all ſuche mangers as theſe be, muſt haue ſtaues made faſte at the one ende in the wall, or vppon the ſide of the manger nerte to the wall, and at the other ende

you

you muſt make them faſt to the outſide of the manger, and let ſuch ſtaues be placed a foot and an halfe one from an other, to the end that your horſe may eaſily reach his forrage, and yet not be able to caſt it out of his manger, nor into his fellowes roome with his head. The third waie is to make it foure times as bigge as our common mangers are, ſo that the horſe can do no more than reach eaſilie to the bottome, and this manger muſt be all plankes, as well in the bottome as on the ſides, that the horſe may both eate his prouender and forrage therein. This manger haue I often made in Flaunders, being in the campe, where I had no ſtables, but was forced to make my horſes roomes in a barne or great houſe, in this ſort: You muſt firſt at the one ende of the houſe or barne, where you meane that your manger ſhall ſtand, digge a pitte in the ground three foot and an halfe deepe, let it be fiue foote from the wall or end of the houſe, where your horſe muſt ſtand, with his right or left ſide to it, and let the pitte be from the wall that ſhall be before your horſes head, ſo as your manger may be two foote and an halfe wide in the bottome, and three foote wide in the toppe, then ſhall you put a poſt therein of ſuch height as you will haue your manger, then may you make an other pit in the corner of the foreſaid wall, and hauing nailed a ſtrong planke at both endes to the foreſaid poſtes, then may you make two holes in the wall, into the which you ſhall putte two ſmall peeces of timber, and naile them at the other endes faſt to the two foreſaide poſtes, a foote beneath the neather edge of your plancke, then may you ſet a trough therevppon for the horſe both to eate his forrage and prouender in: then may you ſet an other poſt in the ground behind your horſe to hang your barre vpon, and the other ende thereof to your firſt poſt: in this ſorte may you make all the reſt of your roomes, with manger

and

and barre betwixt your horſes, very commodiouſly and quickly. And as touching your planckes, it is a thing not vſed beyond ſeas, and yet haue I kepte my horſes there as ſounde as euer I did in England vppon the planckes.

Kingdon.

How I pray you may that be? For if you ſhould let them ſtand on the grounde, it will in ſhort time become all mire: and if you paue your ſtable, it will be verie colde, and alſo weare your horſes ſhoes, breake them and his hoſes, much more than vpon the planckes, and your horſes alſo wil ſpend twice as much litter as vpon the plancks.

Clifford.

As touching that thou ſaieſt the grounde will be all mire, thou art deceiued: for thou muſt firſt digge awaie the earth two or three fote deepe, and fill in vnder your horſes, grauel, ſand, and ſtones, if they may be had, but if thou canſt haue nothing but ſtones, then muſt thou breake them with great hammers, and couer them with horſe dung and litter vppon it for the ſpace of tenne or twelue daies, that your ſtones may be well ſaſtened with the dung and treading of your horſe, and at the twelue daies end, hauing taken away your dung, you ſhall ſee your grauel or ſtones ſo hard as a rocke: but you muſt note by the waie, that you leaue a gutter right vnder your horſes bellies cleane through your ſtable a fote and an halfe deepe, and ſo wide as the breadth of the planck that you can get to couer the ſame fitly, and ſee that you place that plancke ſomewhat lower than the floore of your horſes roome, ſo that if the horſe piſſe either behind or before, it may haue a diſſent to the ſame, ſo as al the wet may paſſe into the foreſaid gutter by meanes of auger holes, which ſhould be made in the plancke for that purpoſe. This is one of the beſt faſhions that euer

I tried or ſaw in any place where ſoeuer I haue trauelled. And whereas thou ſaieſt ſtones weare thy horſes ſhoes, breakes them and their hoofes, waſtes more litter, and is more cold, I could neuer find my horſe to like one whit worſe on the ſtones than on the plancks, although ſomething it weare their ſhoes more than plancks, and that he may alſo breake his hoof or ſhoe ſomthing more than vpon the plancks, & I grant alſo it wil waſte ſomething the more litter, yet if thou wouldeſt well conſider how many good horſes are hurt and miſchiefed in their legs, ſhoulders, and ſmall of their backs, by dangerous ſlipping, ſliding, falling, and hanging their legs therein, thou wouldſt grant the floore made as before, and pauement to be ten times better than the plancks, yea, and they are made and maintained with leſſe charges by an halfe than the planckes. But you muſt note that when you paue your ſtable, that you leaue a gutter through your horſes rownes couered with a plancke, as before, & take heed that whether you plancke your ſtable, or paue, or make the floore with ſand or grauell, that you make it not aboue 4. or 5. inches higher before than behinde: for by making it verie high before your horſe, he ſhall ſtand vneaſily, and if you ſhall moue him neuer ſo little in the ſtable, he will be readie to fall, beſides that, his litter when he doth lie will all fall behinde him: and alſo if he chance to tumble or wallow himſelfe in his rowne, you ſhall ſee him ſettle ſo farre backward that he cannot riſe, for that his hinder legs wil be clean without ỹ polls of his rowne, & he hangs ſo ſhort by ỹ neck that it is not poſſible for him to riſe til you looſe his collar, which is a thing verie dangerous, for vpon ſuch planckes you may ſoone marre any horſe.

Kingdon.

I grant this is a very good way to make my plancks, but I would deſire you to tel me whether it be not good

to

to raiſe my horſes roome a foote higher than the grounde behind, to make my horſes ſhew the better.

Clifford.

It were good for an horſe courſer to make his horſes ſhew higher than they be indeed, but for ỹ eaſe of ỹ horſe, it is ſtark naught, or if your horſe chance at any time to treade behind his plancks he ſhal moſt cruelly ſtrike his leg againſt the taile tree, & if he chance at anie time to wallow or ſlide ſo farre back that his legs fall behind ỹ plancks, he ſhal not be able to riſe, for that he can get no holde on the ground with his hind feete, which thinges conſidered, I would wiſh you to make ỹ ground behind your horſes ſo high as the plancks.

Kingdon.

I grant it is good to make my plancks no higher thã the grouñ behind my horſes, but I would haue you teach me of what length I ſhould make my plancks, & of what wideneſſe I ſhall make my romes, alſo what height I ſhal ſet my manger from the ground, & alſo how high I ſhould ſet my racke from the vpper edge of the manger, & alſo how wide I ſhould ſet the ſtaues the one from ỹ other, & of what length I ſhould make my racks ſtaues.

Clifford.

Firſt as touching your romes I would haue you allow euerie horſe 5. foot, & as touching the length of your plancks, I would haue you make it 8. foot & an halfe betwixt ỹ wall vnder your manger, & the outſide of your tails tree, then ſhal you make your manger frõ ỹ planks to ỹ vpper edge therof 3. foot, & from ỹ vpper edge of your manger to ỹ nether ſide of your rack, make it 2. foot long, & let the ſtaues of your rack be 3. foot & an halfe long, & when you wil place your rack, ſet the nether ſide therof 4. inches frõ the wall, & the vpper ſide no more but a foot & a half diſtãce frõ ỹ wall, by this meanes your rack ſhall ſtand ſo vpright, ỹ there ſhal no duſt fal into your horſes

mane at anie time, and although it be narrow, yet it wil be ſo deepe from the top to the bottome thereof, that it ſhall be able to holde haie inough for your horſe, and alſo when you would ſhake vp the haie with your forke (which is verie good to be done often) for it will not onlie well duſt the haie, but it wil make the horſe eate a great deale the better than when it ſhall be tied faſt in bottels, or trodden in as I haue ſeene diuerſe craftie oſtlers vſe, to the end that they ſhould not eate half their bellies ful, and when you would thus ſhake your haie, you ſhall not ſo ſoone throwe it ouer this broad racke, as ouer thoſe that be narrow, and by reaſon that it ſtandes ſo vpright, the horſes ſhall get their meate much more eaſily out of it than out of the narrow racke, for that you muſt place your narrow racke high, to the end it may be ſomewhat flat, otherwiſe it will hold nothing in effect, & if you ſhould ſet it lowe and flat, that is to ſaie, to ſet the neather edge cloſe to the wall, and the ouer edge two foote and an halfe from the wall, then ſhall your greate and high horſes not be able to eate out of the ſame, and if you ſet it ſo high that they may well eate out of it, then ſhall it be too high for your nagges and lowe geldings, but in the broad racke it is not ſo, for if you ſet the nether edge therof ſo low, as the noſe band of your great horſes collar when he ſtands ſtil & eats not either out of racke or manger, which wil be fiue foot frō your planks, yet ſhall he moſt eaſily get out his haie, & it ſhal be lowe inough for anie nag, beſides that, the narrow racke wil too too much marre your horſes manes with duſt.

Kingdon.

I grant that this broad rack thus ſet almoſt vpright, is much better than the narrow racke, for that I ſhal be able to keep mine horſes manes cleane without duſt, and alſo the leaſt nag that is may reach his meate out of it eaſily, and the great horſe alſo: but whereas you do ſaie

I should set the nether edge thereof foure inches from the wall, I thinke it should not be good, for by that meanes ẏ hay shal fal through the bottome of the rack, & also the horses shal strike their heads against ẏ sharp edge therof.

Clifford.

Whereas thou saiest that haie shall fall out of the bottome of the racke, thou mayest easilie remedie it by laying a planke of fire or seuen inches broad in the bottome thereof, so as the inner side which must bee close against the wal may be a good deale higher then the neather edge therof, which must ioyne those of the staues of the racke, and whereas thou sayest the horse shall strike their heads against the neather edge thereof, thou maist cut awaie the square and make it round on the out side after your rack staues are all in, and plaine it so smoth that he cannot hurt his head nor his face therevpon: thou maiest also make fast a planke of halfe a foote broad at the one edge, to the out side of your racke, and the neather edge close to ẏ wal, this shal not onelie make your rack shew verie comlie, but also it will keepe your horse that he cannot strike his head to the neather edge thereof. But when you place your rack in this sort, you must make your manger so much larger as your racke stands distant from the wall at the neather edge.

Kingdon.

How shall I make this racke fast at the neather side seeing it may not touch the wall?

Clifford.

If thou build thy stable new thou must laie peeces of timber in the wal for that purpose, vpon the which thou maist set the bottome of the rack, and then driue a naile downward thorow the neather side thereof into the rind of the foresayde peece of timber: but if you will place your racke against an olde wall, then must you driue therein peeces of yron made for that purpose, with holes

pearced thꝛough the out end thereof, ſo as you may naile them to the bottome of your racke after they are faſtned in the wall: you muſt alſo dig holes in the wall a little beneath the neather ſide of your racks, into the which you may make faſt ſhoꝛt peeces of timber, and you may naile them at the other ende to the rafter of your chamber, but you muſt let the vpper edge of your racke bee within theſe peeces of timber at the next ſide thereof without, ſo as you may make it faſt with a little peece of yꝛon which would be nailed at the one end vnder the neather ſide of the racks, and at the other ende to the peece of timber which you make faſt in the wall. There is alſo another kinde of racke which doeth farre excell, not onelie this faſhion, but alſo all other that hath bene pꝛactiſed.

How to make a racke that doeth farre excell all the racklike makers inuented by the diſcꝛete Italians, of thoſe that are vſed by the ſouldier-like Germaines, by the bꝛaue French men, pꝛoude and diſdainfull Spaniards, by the cunning and ſkilfull Flemings, and by my Countrie men, whoſe Nature if I truelie paint out, I ſhould but offend, foꝛ the Pꝛouerbe ſayth: It is an euill Birde that beraieth her owne neaſt: and if I ſhould flatter them, all wiſe men would condemne me, and mine owne conſcience accuſe me, foꝛ the Loꝛde knowes & all thoſe that haue made triall of me, that I am a thouſand times better contented wᵗ honeſt painful pouertie, then with the riches of India, where I cannot be liked without vſe of flatterie, neither reſembling the Paraſite Gnato, noꝛ yet the boaſting Souldier Thraſo. Thus much haue I dꝛeamed, but nowe beeing awaked let vs go to our purpoſe, which is to make this rare and ſtraunge kinde of racke which I firſt dꝛeamed of when I ſerued ſir Thomas Scot of Kent, to whom I am much bound, not onelie foꝛ that he gaue me a young hoꝛſe to

trie

trie my cunning vpon, being then a stranger to him, for the space of two yeares, wherein he vsed such wisdome and patience, that I must needs commend him before all those that euer I haue serued in England, for although he could by his skill haue taught me, yet did he neither teach me contrarie, or find fault with anie thing, yet cannot I commend him halfe so much for this, as for that he gaue me leaue to beate downe the rackes of his stable, plankes and postes, and to paue the same and make the postes and barres according to mine owne small skill, but the thing wherfore he deserueth immortal praise is, ỳ when he sawe this rack then first by me inuented, not brought to anie perfection, though he had power to command me to alter it to his former fashion, yet did hee wiselie winke thereat till such time as he sawe I had throughlie found the discommoditie thereof, and then he did gentlie perswade me to alter it if I thought good, by which his gentle and prudent doings he did not onelie make me yéeld willinglie to that he might haue forced me by his authoritie, by the which he did wonderfullie content me, but also till this daie, I cãnot find anie man that (in my iudgement) doth deserue the commendations that he hath forced me to giue of him, & that all the Gnatoes that shall thinke that I haue said thus much by the way of flatterie, I doe thée to wit that I parted out of sir Thomas Scots house, not as a friend but as an enimie, but yet he paied me my wages so iustlie, that I cannot but yet once againe commend him, not for that I héereby séeke his friendship, yea I doe not thinke that in my life time I shal sée him or haue to do with him, yet am I thoroughly perswaded that I shal highlie offend if I should defraud mine enimie of his right. But to our purpose. I neuer gaue ouer till I had brought my foresayde inuention to his full perfection at maister Barnard Drakes in Deuon sheere, who is both a wise and an honest

Gen-

Gentleman: And it is made in this ſorte, you muſt firſt ſet your manger a foote and a halfe from the wall that is before your horſes head, then maie you palace vpon the inner edge of the manger at euerie fiue foote diſtance a peece of timber of ſuch length, as the other ends thereof be made faſt to the flower that is ouer your horſes, then hauing made your racke in peeces of fiue foote and a halfe of length, then may you begin to ſet vp the firſt peece of your racke, make two holes wherein you muſt make faſt the firſt two endes of your racke in the wall, and two tenans on the other two ends thereof, which muſt be ioyned faſt into two mortices which ſhould be made in the peece of timber for that purpoſe. When you haue thus placed the firſt peece of racks, then ſhall you place another at the one end into the foreſaid peece of timber on the other end with another peece of timber. Thus when you haue placed all the peeces of your racke, then ſhalt you plancke it cloſe betwirt the bottome of your racke to the edge of the manger, in ſuch ſort as no man can perceiue the hollowneſſe which remaines betwirt the wall and thoſe plankes, then ſhall you take little peeces of timber and make them faſt at one end into the neather ſide of your racke, and let the other ends leane againſt the wall, in ſuch ſort as you ſee the rafters of the roofe of an houſe, then muſt you naile on them planks or laths, to the end that your forrage fall not downe behinde your plankes and manger, and this ſloping pentice ſhal alwaies force your forrage to fall towards your racke, ſo as your horſes may reach it at their pleaſure out of this racke, there cannot fall anie duſt vppon your horſes heads, no nor ſo much as vppon their noſes.

Kingdon.

This racke is verie good, but hereby I ſhall loſe a foot and a halfe of my ſtable, for that the inner ſide of my manger

manger muſt ſtand a foote and halfe from the wall.

Clifford.

But it ſhal ſaue the more litter thē the diſcommoditie therof ſhal counteruaile, by reaſon of the great rome that ſhall remaine behinde and vnder your manger, in ſuch ſort that you ſhall neuer ſee your horſes to be able to pawe out anie of their litter with their fore feete, and your racke being placed vpright, they ſhall be able to reach their forrage with a thouſand times more eaſe then out of our ordinarie rackes.

Kingdon.

What meane you by ſetting your racke vpright?

Clifford.

I meane that thou ſhouldeſt ſet the vpper ſide and neather ſide thereof of like diſtance from the wall, and make the bottome thereof that muſt holde vp your forrage to ſtand in ſuch ſort againſt the wall, as wee commonlie ſee a pentice ouer a ſhoppe windowe ſo as there may nothing ſtaie vpon the ſame but that it ſhall all fall toward your vpright racke, whether you place this rack high or lowe, yet may your horſe eaſilie get out his forrage, if you place it not ſo high as he cannot reach it.

Kingdon.

Whether is it good to make my ſtable dore right behinde my horſes, or in the ende, and whether is it good to make a flore ouer my ſtable or no?

Clifford.

As touching thy firſt demaund, it is an hundred times better to make the dore in the ende of the ſtable then in the ſide thereof, for by making it in the end of the ſtable, the winde ſhall neuer haue full power vppon anie of your horſes, the dore beeing open, you may alſo turne your horſes heades towardes your houſe or court, and make behinde them a dore or win-

dowe to throw out your dung at, which shall be a great ease to your horse keeper, and also it will not be hurtfull to your horses, for the lesse drudgerie you put your keeper vnto, the better shall your horses be dressed, yea, you shall neuer see where it is painfull carrying out of dung, & fetching the water and forrage far off, anie good horse keeper staie long, but such drudges as cannot tell whether to go, therfore mine opinion is, that they that will haue good horse keepers and their horses well dressed, that they seeke no lesse the ease of their keepers, than the commoditie of their horses, and wheras thou demandest whether it be good to haue a chamber or flowre ouer the stable or no, my answere, I am sure shal not be liked of all, but so manie as haue grace to vse wit instead of wil, will vndoubtedlie account it meere follie to build a stable like a vaine pallace, which will aske ten times a mans height of wall, with a roofe ouer it to keep them drie, & when the raine comes there can no more be kept dris then can stand on a flowre, vnder which roome hee might make fiue roomes, which would be as pleasant to nature, as vainelie to waste so much charges to so small purpose, nay rather to no purpose, for that such an house or stable as hath no chamber in it, in Winter is so extreame colde, that neither man nor beast may endure it, and in the Summer it is on the other side to hot, and besides, by making the keeper waste halfe of his wages to finde him stockings and shoes to fetch his forrage, thy horses thereby shall be euil dressed, and it shall waste thee more forrage in the space of seauen yeares then the building of a new stable would cost thee: yet sure I thinke him verie vnreasonable that will not graunt that it is better to raise the wall ten foote higher then the top of his racke, and to make a chamber, in the which he may lay forrage inough for his horses vnder one selfe same roofe, which is double commoditie and profit, then vaine-

lie to goe wast so much money as to build another house to laie his forrage in, for the wearying of the keepers, doth deceiue his horses of their dressing.

At what time of the daie is it best to water a horse, and also whether it be good to wash him or not.

THE best time to water your horses is in the morning betwixt seauen and eight of the clocke, and betweene foure and fiue in the after noone. And touching ỳ washing of an horse, it is verie good, as hath bene before taught, and it is also good in the Summer when he eats grasse, as wel as at anie other time, the weather being hot, to learne your horse to swim in some deepe water, with a boie or a man vppon him, and a surcingle girded fast about his bodie, vpon ỳ which it shall be good ty tie a couple of wads made of straw or haie, in such height, that the man being mounted, and hawing his legges backward, may holde himselfe fast by the said wispes with his calues or hams: this is a verie excellent waie, for that you may sit as fast almost, as though you had a saddle, and take heede when you will swim your horse in this sort, that you bridle him with a watering bit or snaffle, or else w̄ a paire of false raines at his ordinarie bit, else in swimming if you should vse your ordinarie raines, you shall pull his head vnder the water. And note alwaies, that first when you would learne your horse to swimme, that you let him swim but a little waie at once, and then letting him stand still and making much of him till he be in breath, you may swimme him againe as before: This is a verie necessarie thing for a souldiers horse or horse of seruice to learne him to swimme well.

Kingdon.

I grant that it is good to learne an horſe to ſwim, and alſo to waſh him oftē in hot weather, ſo that he be not driuen into any heat before, for that were very dangerous, but my purpoſe was to know of you whether it be good to waſh an horſe after hee hath beene ridden, yea or no.

Clifford.

It is not amiſſe if thy horſe be verie foule and miris to ride him through ſome pond or watering place ſo faſt as you can make him paſe or trot without ſtaying him or letting him to drinke, and take heed withall you ride him not too deepe, if hee be a verie fat horſe and alſo hot.

Kingdon.

But diuerſe good horſe men are of opinion that it is not good to waſh an horſe when he is hot.

Clifford.

I graunt it is not good if your horſe be extreame hot and alſo verie fat but if he be but reaſonable hot either from comming from giuing him his leſſon, or trauailing him, you may boldlie waſh his legges vppe to his bellie without anie daunger as before, taking good heed that you waſh not your horſes bellie, or as high as the ſkirtes of the ſaddle, as I haue ſeene many vnexpert horſe keepers doe, which thing in deed is verie dangerous to an horſe that is hot: If your watring place bee verie nigh to your ſtable, then I would haue you ride your horſe two or three turnes after you haue waſhed him vpon a good round trot, and as ſoone as you are lighted to put him into the Stable, and not to walke him in the hand in anie caſe, for that the colde aire ſhall verie marre him.

Hovv, and at vvhat time it is beſt to let an horſe bloud, and alſo by what ſignes you ſhal know when it is needefull.

Kingdon.

I pray you ſhew me at what time of the yeere it is beſt to let mine horſe bloud, for that ſome are of opinion, that it is good to let a horſe bloud foure times a yeere, and ſome but twice a yeere, and other, but once in a yeere: and ſome would not haue him let bloud at all, except there be appearance of ſickeneſſe.

Clifford.

Thou haſt rightly termed thoſe opinions, for indeede they are but vaine & opinionated men that woulde haue an horſe being of good health to be let bloud at anie time of the yeare, vnleſſe they be ſuch geldings or horſes as you will in the ſpring time turne to graſſe: for experience doth teach, that it is not amiſſe to let ſuch horſes bloud three or foure daies before you turne them out.

Kingdon.

But were it not beſt in the ſpring time to let anie horſe bloud, for that I haue heard ſome of the opinion, that it is good, for that the horſes of Polonia, as they ſay, let themſelues bloud once in the yeare, and that in the ſpring time?

Clifford.

I graunt they ſay ſo, but thoſe that teach ſuche vntruthes as theſe be, I may well compare them to the learned fooles which carrie their ſcience in their ſachels, and their wiſedome in their lippes, ſpeaking opinions, and what they haue heard, which is intollerable in ſuch

men to recount what they haue read, but to the good rider, souldior, keeper, or farrier that will haue credite giuen to his wordes, hee must not recount what hes hath read, but what hee hath seene and done with his hands.

Kingdon.

This by the waie (but to our purpose:) I pray you teach me in what vaine it is best to let my horse bloud, and what order is to be obserued therein.

Clifford.

First, thou shalt let him bloud in the necke vaine, which goeth right to the middle of the horses heart, and spreadeth not abroad towards the necke and wythers, as some vaine horseleaches haue presumed to teach me, but I doubting their vnskilfull malapertnesse being at sir Thomas Scots in Kent, who is not onlie a verie good horseman, but also a singular wise man and a iust as euer I serued, I gaue a countrie man sixe pence, being on a cold frostie daie to shew me an horse that was dead, as I do remember it was two or three miles distance frō Scots hall, which horse I cut vp in this order: First I beganne with the necke vaine at the horses head, and put a small straight wand into the same, when I had put my rod as farre into the vaine as I coulde with my knife, I opened the same to the point thereof, so long til I thrust my rod by the same conduct into the middest of the horses heart, and afterward returned to the arturie which lieth iust vnder the foresaide veine, and commeth into the middle of the heart also, and carrieth the vitall bloud to nourish the spirites withall, as they saie, which I doe not denie, and that veine, they saie, carrieth the nutrimentall bloud, which if they woulde leaue rolling in their Rhetorike, and chopping of Logike, it were more proper in this arte to learne it the bloud which nourisheth the bodie, for that wee

igno-

ignorant grooms and horſeleaches vnderſtand no ſuch horſeleaches latine, nor eloquent termes, whereby they do not onelie ſeeke to deceiue vs, but a number of wiſe and learned Gentlemen, for the which I do not enuie them ſo much, as alſo for that they dare preſume to ſaie that a horſe hath a verie little braine or none at all: in the which two things, they do moſt notably lie as wel as in a number of other things which were here to long to repeate.

Kingdon.

How much ſhall I let one of theſe horſes bloud that is to be turned to graſſe?

Clifford.

That muſt I referre to your owne iudgement, for that ſome horſes may bleede more than others by a great deale, therefore thou muſt take heede firſt, knowe well thy horſes qualitie and ſtrength, and afterward let him bloud accordingly.

Kingdon.

I grant that this is good, but I pray you teach me by what ſignes I ſhall know when to let my horſe bloud, to preuent ſickneſſe and preſerue health, ſithence you denie me to let my horſe bloud in the ſpring time, which cannot ſincke into my head, but to be good, for that the horſes of Polonia let themſelues bloud by the inſtinct of nature.

Clifford.

As touching the ſignes I anſwere, that thou ſhalte knowe it in this ſort, by that thy horſe rubbeth his taile and mane, bites his bodie, and that his veines ſwel and appeare greater than they were accuſtomed. And alſo the inſide of his eies will be verie redde. And as touching the horſes of Polonia, they teach thee no other thing than as I haue before ſaide, which, if thou be not verie forgetfull, thou maieſt remember that I told thee

euen

euen now, that it was not good to let thy horſe bloude without appearance of ſickeneſſe, which theſe horſes of Polonia duely obſerue, not onlie in the ſpring time, but all the whole yeare throwow, when they feele anie appearance of ſickneſſe, as before, of the which thing I haue had good triall, not onelie by foure of them which were in the Prince of Orange his ſtable, but alſo by foure other, which Monſieur Villiers had, I hauing the charge of his horſes, I did obſerue in them, as before.

Kingdon.

I pray you ſhewe me in what place of their bodies, theſe horſes let themſelues bloud.

Clifford.

Vpon their ſhoulders moſt commonly ſo high, as is poſſible for them to reach towardes their withers, they will alſo let themſelues bloud on their buttockes a little beneath the huckle bone, but this laſt they vſe not halfe ſo cõmon as the firſt: note, that theſe horſes will alwaies let themſelues bloud ſo nere the place where the griefe or ſickeneſſe is as is poſſible for them to reache wyth their mouthes.

At vvhat time it is beſt to purge with graſſe or otherwiſe.

Kingdon.

I Pray you ſhew me at what time of the yere it is beſt to purge my horſe, for that ſome are of opinion, that it is beſt to purge him in the ſpring time with graſſe or otherwiſe.

Clifford.

Thou ſhalt neuer purge thy horſe otherwiſe than with

with graſſe or greene corne, vnleſſe the appearaunce of ſickneſſe, then ſhall it be tolerable both to let him bloud, and to purge him with a medicine which ſhall be hereafter taught in the Farriers office. And as touching purging with graſſe, the beſt waie is to giue it him in the ſpring time, whiles it is verie tender, or otherwiſe it wil purge little or nothing at all.

Kingdon.

How manie daies ſhall I let my horſe eate graſſe in this ſort?

Clifford.

Euen as manie as is poſſible for thée to get it.

Kingdon.

What reaſon haue you, for that by continuall purging my horſe, I ſhall marre him?

Clifford.

But thy horſe will not purge with graſſe or greene corne aboue the ſpace of tenne daies at the moſt, no, nor ſo much, if thou giue him prouender, whereof he will eate more, and with better appetite than when he eates haie.

Kingdon.

Then, ſhall I giue my horſe graſſe but tenne daies onelie?

Clifford.

I tolde thée euen nowe, that thou ſhouldeſt giue it him ſo long as was poſſible to get it, for the longer hée eates it, the ſounder ſhall he be, yea, I haue alwaies in Flaunders and Fraunce, when my horſes haue failed to eate graſſe once, in the ſommer time, one moneth at the leaſt, I haue alwaies had it for an infallible rule, that they haue béene a great deale more ſubiect to ſickeneſſe the whole yeare following. But by letting my horſe eate graſſe or greene corne at all times when I could get it, I haue kept them much ſounder than by barde meate,

and more luſtie and diſpoſed to trauell or do anie thing, yea I haue in my iourney, or otherwiſe at all times when I ſawe my horſe refuſe his meate, immediatly ſought to get him graſſe, which is a verie preſent medicine to make him eate his meate at what time ſoeuer he loathes the ſame, which comes of no other cauſe than of the glutting with prouender, or when his ſtomack is weake by meanes of extreame trauell: When hee ſhall haue taken anie colde, it is verie good to giue him graſſe to eate, and benegréeke in his prouender, and to exerciſe him euerie daie once a little, in doing whereof, you muſt haue great care that you exerciſe him ſo moderately that in anie wiſe you make him not ſweat. In this ſort ſhall you rid anie horſe of his colde, be it neuer ſo great, if you will haue care that you keepe him not too hote at one time, and too colde at an other, and that you ſet him in a reaſonable warme ſtable, for in a colde ſtable you ſhal neuer keep your horſe ſound, but alwaies ſubiect to ſickenelle.

Kingdon.

Then would you would make me beléeue that it is good to trauel mine horſe with graſſe, which al good horſe men do denie, ſaying, it is too groſſe and faint a feeding for an horſe to trauell with, and being fed with graſſe, he ſhall not be able to runne or to doe anie ſeruice, as well as when he is fedde with hard meate.

Clifford.

Good horſemen I grant them, but yet in this point for want of experience they erre much, for I haue neuer found my horſe more diſpoſed to trauel vpon any meate than with graſſe, ſo that you obſerue this order heere following. As ſoone as your horſe hath eaten graſſe til his bellie be full, and that he begynnes to leaue it, then muſt you offer him hate, which you ſhall ſee him eate as willingly as he did the graſſe at the firſt. Thus by

giuing him grasse at one time, and haie at another, and also his ordinarie prouender, you shall keepe your horse in good state, sound, and disposed to anie trauell, but he shall be also very long winded, and able to doe anie seruice or trauell, that you shal put him vnto, so that you exercise him daily, for if it is want of exercise, and not meat that maketh man and beast vnable to endure trauell.

Kingdon.

But were it not good to let my horse lie in his owne dung, & not to stir him so lõg as he purgeth with grasse?

Clifford.

No, it is naught, and contrarie to nature, as thou maiest well perceiue, if thou wilt but marke thy horses lying when he is in the fields, which I am assured thou wilt graunt, for thou neuer sawest anie horse lie in his own dung in the field, for that is proper onelie to swine, and they are all but swinish and hoggish horsemen that vse such beastlie fashions, for the cleaner thy horse is kept, the healthier and sounder shall he be.

Kingdon.

I haue seen you to let an horse of M. Throckmortons stand vpon his dung, & also throw water on the same.

Clifford.

It is true that thou sawest me let him stand vpon it, but that was to mend his hoofes, which were almost marred, by reason of an vnskilfull keeper and farrier, but thou diddest neuer see me suffer him to lie vpon it, for that the keeper threw it awaie at night, and put it vnder him in the morning presently when he was dressed.

Kingdon.

Then, would you haue me to dresse my horse so as I do when he is at hard meate?

Clifford.

Yea, in the same sort, wout any difference, & also ride & exercise him daily, which is the best phisick to preserue

unto horſes health that euer I found, if thou will adde two ſimples more which is venegreeke in his oates, as hath beene before taught, at ſome times, which will preuent colde wormes, and a number of other diſeaſes. The ſecond ſimple is, good diet, and moderate feeding him with ſuch forrage and prouender, as is cleane, ſweete, and wholeſome.

The end of the third booke.

The fourth Booke.

Certaine briefe notes ne-

ceſſarie to bee knowen of euerie Gentleman, Souldier, Rider, and Keeper, teaching him howe he ſhould make his cauiſon, his bridle, headſtalles, and raines, and alſo howe hee ſhoulde make his ſaddle in ſuch ſort as he may carrie his head peece ſo commodiouſlie, that although he be the Marſhall of a campe, and that he haue pages to carrie it, yet ſhall he finde it a great deale more readie, and alſo it ſhall not trouble nor let him anie waie, nor be able to fall off whether he gallop or runne, or what exerciſe ſo euer he doth on horſe backe. Alſo how to make his piſtoll faſt to his ſaddle, that it ſhall be able neither to ſtirre, nor yet ſhall he be letted thereby anie more, either in getting vp or downe, then if hee had no piſtoll at all.

MAke your cauiſon of foure faſhions, the firſt is all made of one peece, the ſecond is made of two peeces ioyned in the middle, or elſe of three peeces: the third faſhion is made of foure peeces, each peece an inch and a quarter, being with an hole in each end thereof, and theſe foure peeces muſt be faſt riuetted with ſmall nailes to a peece of thicke and ſtrong leather ſo long as your ordinarie cauiſon, which muſt be couered with a peece of thin leather to hide the heads of your nailes that they cannot be ſeene, then may you make your two rings faſt to the ends of the foreſaid leather, as you doe to your cauiſon, this is a verie good waie for that it ſhall not haue anie yron to hurt your

horse vpon his cheekes, but on his nose onlie. The fourth fashion, thou must take fiue little clout or tacke nailes, with their heads some thing broade, then mayest thou driue them through a peece of thick leather, and let them be distant one from another an inch, and hauing couered the said peece of leather with another peece that must be somewhat broader then the first, and stitcht it so neere the heads of your nailes as is possible, then may you make fast your ringes in such sorte as you did to your other cauison, and that being done, cut off al your nailes with a paire of sharpe pincers, so as they may appeare no more than a wheat corne length without the leather. These two last cauisons are excellent good for a horse that is harde of nose, if you make fast a strappe of leather vnder his chinne, and a chaine in his mouth, as hath bene before taught, for if you shall slacke the one hand and drawe the other neuer so little, you shall make your horse more to obey you, and stand in greater awe of your cauison, then if you pulled him with the strength of two men at your cauison made all of one peece, and the reason is, for that these two cauisons will easilie bee made to runne ouer your horses nose, in such sorte as you drawe a sawe ouer a peece of timber, when you cut it, & although this cauison may bethought to cruell of those that haue not tried it, yet I assure you that when you haue once proued it so as is heere taught, you shall finde it farre to excell both the mouscroule, chaine, and cauison, made of one peece, for with these two cauisons you shall neuer nede to bruse your horses noses, so as they shall swell or make them rawe, no, if a man haue knowledge and reason, & haue these two cauisons vpon anie horse, you shall scarce euer perceiue vpon his nose that he hath ben touched with a cauison, for that he shall be so light vppon the same, after that he is thoroughlie acquainted therewith, that you shall see him

goe

goe backward a round trot with halfe the strength of your little finger.

Kingdon.

I graunt that these cauisons are good, but I would faine haue you to tell me which is the best.

Clifford.

That made of foure peeces of yron is best of all other that euer I tried.

Kingdon.

You haue taught me of what length I should make my peeces of yron, and also how I should make them fast, but I knowe not of what fashion I shoulde make them.

Clifford.

You must make them of such fashion as you do your cauison turned hollow, and filed with teeth, and turne it a little crooked, noting, that you make it not halfe so great as your ordinarie cauison, nor so hollowe by two partes.

Kingdon.

I haue often heard you saie, that while you were with Monsieur Villiers in Flaunders, you inuented how to make your headstall to serue for two purposes, that is to saie, both for a collar and for a headstal, which thing is verie commodious vpon great iourneis, and in a campe for souldiers, therefore I praie you teach me of what fashion I shall make the same.

Clifford.

This kinde of headstall is verie commodious in deed, for y you shall not be troubled to carrie a collar at your saddle; & hauing need to ride your horse with false raines you may make the raines therof with buttons, that you may both button it to your bit when you ride, & coming into the stable, you may buttō the same to the

rings

rings of your headstall, yea I haue often in the campe made one of my raines to serue me for a martingale, & the other of them for a paire of false raines, by tying a knot on each end thereof, and cutting it full of slits. But to the purpose. Thou shalt onelie make thy throat band and thy nose band of thy headstall double, and put theron a couple of rings, and let these two ringes be made fast one to the other with a couple of linkes, two inches and a halfe or three inches long, and to the neathermost of those rings you may fasten your coller raines at such time as you will vnbridle your horse. Thus shall you haue no neede to take off your headstall, but onelie to vnbuckle the two pothmouths of your bit.

Kingdon.

This is a verie good waie for a souldier, but I think for a Gentleman it is verie vnseemelie to ride with a paire of yron rings at his headstall, and with one of his coller raines made in a martingale, and the other in a paire of false raines.

Clifford.

Whereas thou saiest it shall be vnseemelie for a Gentleman, I answere thee, it shall not be vnseemlie neither for Gentleman nor noble man, if thou wilt leaue vaine pride & foolishnesse a mome: For I haue seene Monsieur Villiers who is a noble gentleman, & also a man of great credit and authoritie, not to ride heerewith onelie in the campe, but also both in Cities and townes, and I haue seene him ride therewith amongst all the braue French men that Monsieur had then in his armie when he was first Duke of Brabant and gouerneur of the low Countries, yea, and he would often saie, that he would not chaunge his headstall for a waggen full of their taffata bridles: But for such as are better, thou maiest vnbuckle thy nose and throat band, and take off thy rings, which beeing done, no man shall perceiue this headstall

to

to differ anie thing in faſhion from our ordinarie head-ſtalls. And whereas thou ſayeſt, it is vnſeemelie to ride with thy coller raines made in a martingale and falſe raines, thou mayeſt chuſe whether thou wilt vſe it ſo or no.

Kingdon

If I vſe not my coller raines to a martingale and falſe raines, as is before taught, I ſhall be troubled with carrying them almoſt as badde as if I had a collar.

Clifford.

This ſhall not trouble halfe ſo much as a coller, for thou mayeſt make it faſt vnder thy ſaddle couer or ſkirt, ſo as no man can perceiue it, for I haue made Monſieur Villiers often times carrie his raines in this ſorte, and yet neither he nor anie other could perceiue it: You muſt doe it in this ſorte, cut a thong of leather of two foote and a halfe of length, in which you muſt paſſe through the couer of the ſaddle faſt by the edge of your hinder boulſter, ſo high as you can reach with your hande to take holde of the pointes of the forefayes thong, and hauing thus paſſed it through, make a knot in each ende thereof, then may you tie your raines faſt in the one ende of the ſayd thong, being firſt doubled a foote long, then may you drawe the other end and make it faſt to your girſe, by meanes whereof your raines ſhall lie ſo high vnder the hinder boulſter of your ſaddle, that no man can perceiue it, if your collar bee not verie great, you maye alſo carrie it in this ſorte.

Kingdon.

I graunt that this is a good faſhioned headſtall, not onelie for ſouldiers in the campe, but alſo for Gentlemen when they will ride anie great iourney, for that they ſhall not neede to charge their keeper with a wallet full of collars, nor haue them tyed at their ſaddles.

which is a verie vnſeemelie fashion, and alſo you ſhall bee ſure that you ſhall not leaue your collar behinde. But now I would deſire you to teach mee how I may make the raines of my bit in ſuch ſorte that I ſhall not haue need with my ſword hand when I am in ſeruice, at anie time to touch the ſame, for that with our ordinarie raines wee are much troubled when wee are forced to ride with our ſwordes drawen, or our launces in our right hands, by reaſon that if wee let our raines at anie time goe too long, or the one ſhorter then the other, wee haue no other remedie but to vſe the helpe of our right hand and to redreſſe the ſame, which is not onelie dangerous in time of neceſſitie, but alſo it is vnſeaſie and incommodious in colde weather, for that wee muſt be forced to weare a gloue or a gauntlet with fingers, for that we cannot be able to hold our raines right and orderlie, either in mitten or plaine gauntlet, and if I ſhoulde for remedie hereof tie a knot on my bridle raine, I ſhould thereby not onelie holde my raines vneuen, but it would be painfull to carrie ſuch a great knot in my hande, wherefore I praie you heartelie to ſhew me if euer you haue found anie other fashion that is better.

Clifford.

Yes, I haue ſeene the Germaines vſe a much better fashion in making of their bridle raines, and I haue alſo proued it farre to excell the fashion which we commonlie vſe, for that you may holde your raines right without the helpe of your right hande, and you may boldlie let them goe at your pleaſure vppon anie occaſion, and take them againe ſo right, without the helpe of your right hand as is poſſible, you may alſo weare a mitten cuffe or cloſe gauntlet, that it ſhall not let you anie thing at all, and the foreſaide raines are made in this order: Firſt cut your two raines two fadome and a

quarter

quarter of length, and place thereupon a couple of buckles, then ſhall you cut another peece of leather of one foote and three quarters long, then ſhall you cut another peece halfe a foote long, and hauing marked iuſt the middle of the two foreſayde peeces, and ſtitched them faſt together through the two fore taken markes, then ſhall you at each end of your ſhort peece of leather make a great button, and ſee that thoſe two buttons bee of one ſelfe diſtance from the ends of your long peece of leather, then muſt you double your peece of leather, and pearſe holes in it for two buttons to the endes thereof, then ſhall you buckle your bit raines on the one ende of the foreſayd peece, and the other raine to the other end thereof, and ſee that you buckle them of like diſtance from your foreſaid buttons, ſo that when you ſhall take holde of the raines with your hand betwixt the two foreſayde buttons, you may holde them of one iuſt length.

Kingdon.

But theſe raines will be ſo ſhort that if the cheekes of my bit bee long I ſhall not bee able eaſilie to put the raines ouer my horſes head being brideled.

Clifford.

Canſt thou not put thy raines firſt ouer thy horſes head when thou wouldeſt bridle him, or elſe put them ouer before thy curbe of his bit, for when he is uncurbed thou mayeſt eaſilie put them vp and take them downe.

Kingdon.

I doe verie well allowe of this headſtall and raines, but I would faine if I might, craue ſo much at your hande, to tell me your opinion as touching the making of my ſaddle, and what ſaddle is beſt both for ſeruice and trauaile, and alſo whether the ſtole ſaddle be good in ſeruice or no.

Clifford.

As touching the making of thy saddle, the lighter it is, the better it is, and as touching the lightnesse thereof, the chiefest waie is, that you take heede that your tree be not to wide, for if your tree be large, your saddle will require so much stuffing, that it is not possible for it to bee light, and as touching the fitting of the tree to the horse backe, see that it beare equallie, in all places lyke much, saving on his backe bone, and as touching the stuffing of his panell, the best stuffing y^ euer I could find was buffe haire, or else fine hay, & flocks on it, but before you stuffe your saddle with flocks, you must first ride in it, & after y^ the haie is setled some thing fall, then may you stuffe it with flockes vpon the haie, this is a good waie to stuffe anie saddle, for that it shall bee much lighter then if it were stuffed all with haire, yea I haue often when my saddle hath beene stuffed with buffe haire or flockes, after it hath beene somewhat setled, taken out the panells and stuffed it in the contraries ends with haie.

Kingdon.

I doe verie well like that my saddle shoulde be light, and also filde to the horses backe, for thereby it shall sit the faster, but I would haue you to teach me how I should make the hinder and forebolsters thereof.

Clifford.

As touching the height of thy bolsters, let them be fiue inches high at the least, so that they may saue your thigh from anie stroke of launce or other weapon: and as touching the length of your forebolster, make it not aboue twelue inches from the middle of your saddle, so that when you lay the other end of your measure to the nether point of the foresaide bolster, they shall be but twelue inches distance, as before, wherby your knee may come a good deale lower than the bolster, by this meanes you shall state your selfe verie wel by your knees, which

is

is not possible for you to do by your bolsters being low, and as touching your hinder bolster, I would haue you make the ende thereof of such length, as betweene the other, and the middle of the seate close to your hinder tree, it may be seauentéene inches and an halfe distance, and that you place those two bolsters so farre forward at the nether ends, as they may keepe your thigh close to the point of your fore bolster, so as your thigh may haue no libertie to moue: and as touching the length of your seat, from the hinder tree to the middle of the fore tree, let it be sixteene inches, for if you make your saddle shorter in the seate, it shall be verie dangerous when you leape or stirre your horse for slime breaking of you, and it shall not be amisse to cause the vpper ende of your fore bolster to stand behinde the head of your saddle foure inches at the least, and that shall keepe your thigh so farre backward, that it shal not be possible for you to strike the neather part of your bellie at anie time against the head of your saddle, & it is good to make the head of your saddle so as it may leane forward: for if it stand vpright, it shal be the more dangerous, not onelie for hurting of your bellie, but also in leaping being armed, you shal strike ỹ nether part of your armour, vpon your saddle bowe, so as it shal make you beleeue your intrals are broken in peeces, besides that also it may breake the girdle of your armor, & lose ỹ same, & when you wold breake your lance vpon your enimie, you shal not be able to leane forward, which is a great disaduantage: for both best and surest riding when you would entounter your enimie is to leane forward so much as you may conuenientlie, either leaping ouer ditches or anie other exercise, being armed ỹ surest waie is to leane forward, for feare of hurting the small of your backe, which thing I haue well approued by mine experience in Flanders when the Prince of Parma besieged Oudewater, and Monsieurs armie, then lying

afore Gaunt, I then riding vppon a baie horse of Monsieur Villiers named Souldier in mine armour, I chaunced to put the horse sodainely in his gallop, which hee tooke with such furie, and leapt so sodainely forwarde that he had nigh broken my backe, that I being laide downe, coulde not rise but as I was lifted vppe for the space of fifteene daies, which thing I might easily haue remedied with leaning forward a little.

Kingdon.

I grant it is verie good to make the hinder bolsters and the fore bolsters of the saddle in all points as you haue taught me; and also that it is good to leane forward, not onelie when I encounter mine enimie with a launce, but also with anie weapon whatsoeuer, but the thing that troubleth me, is how I should holde mine hand close vpon the horses mane; which is not onelie good to keepe in his muzell, so as he can not cast it vp, but also it is verie good to let mine enimie, that hee cannot cut the reines of the beidle.

Clifford.

I do confesse that the saddle that leaneth much forward with his head, is something troublesome when you would holde your hand vpon your horses mane, but you may remedie it by making it somewhat higher: for if it be of a reasonable height, that is to saie, that it be six inches betwixt the horses creast, and the neather side of the saddle head, it shall let you nothing at all.

Kingdon.

If I make the head of my saddle so high it will be very vncomelie.

Clifford.

It shall be neuer a whit vncomely, I warrant you, if you make your forebolsters stand but one inch distant from the nether side thereof, and it shall be an hundred times more commodious than the vpright head, not only for the reasons before recited, but also for that it shall

much better defend you from any stroke of launce, or other weapon that might chance to be bent against you. Besides that, the carrying the hand upon the creast, is verie seldome to be vsed, and whereas you sais it shal be dangerous for cutting of your raines, you may remedie that by pulling downe your hand when you perceiue your enimie to strike at your raines.

Kingdon.

You haue certified me as touching my saddle, raines & collar, but I pray tel me whether ẏ steele saddle be good or not for a souldior for that they are very chargeable and troublesome to be kept. Clifford.

They are not so chargeable & troublesome to be kept, but they are twice as vaine and troublesome to serue in, yea, & also very vnprofitable for that in time of peace they rot, are eaten with worms, & the harnes consumed with rust, & in time of seruice they are not only heauy & chargeable for an horse to carie, but also in rainie weather they are most filthie & painful to be kept clean, ẏ head wherof shal marre the handle of your sword, & the hinder parte thereof shal cut your scabberd in pæces: yea I neuer saw neither Monsieur la Now, nor Mõsieur Villiers, nor that most noble and braue souldiour, the marshall Biron euer to esteme it, nor anie other souldiour of experience.

Kingdon.

What saddle then do you count best, both for trauell and for seruice? Clifford.

A light buffe saddle is the best for great horses and great trotting geldings, for that they are as good to serue in & as sure as anie steele saddle, and you may make them light enough, by stuffing their pannels half with hair, as hath been taught before, and also you must stuffe your hinder bolsters with hay, or else you may make a moulde of wood as big as you will haue your hinder bolster, and of like proportion or fashion, you shall cutte so much

strong

ſtrong ſoale leather as will cover the ſame, and hauing wet it, and nailed it vpon your mould, you muſt drie it in the ſunne, or bake it in the ouen after the breade is drawen, ſo as when you take it off the mould, it may keepe his faſhion like as you ſee a piſtoll caſe, then ſhal you cloſe on a bottome with ſtrong ſhoemakers threde, and on the middeſt you may cloſe an other peece on the inſide, alſo on the vnderſide you muſt leaue a hole as bigge as you may put in your hand, the which ſhall be a verie good place to put your money, ſhirts, or ſtockings in, and if you haue no neede thereof, yet ſhal your ſaddle hereby be almoſt as light as a Scottiſh ſaddle, and the ſtiffe leather ſhall alwaies keepe your bolſter in a right faſhion.

Kingdon.

This bolſter wil be to hard?

Clifford.

You mais make it ſoft inough, by ſtuffing it an inch thicke betwixt the foreſaide leather and your ſaddle couering vpon the inſide toward your leg, and vpon the nether end.

Kingdon.

You haue fully certified me as touching the making of my ſaddle, bridle, and cauiſon, but if you do remember, you promiſed to teach me howe to carrie my headpeece, caſke, or helmet, and piſtoll, ſo as it ſhould not trouble me anie thing at all, neither in mounting on horſeback nor deſcending.

Clifford.

What euer I haue promiſed that I ſhal doubtedly performe, through Gods help, without whoſe grace I am not of my ſelfable as much as to thinck one good thought, but to our purpoſe. Thou ſhalt make faſt thy piſtoll in this ſorte, take a ſtrappe of leather, with a buckle thereon, and put the point thereof downeward betwixt the a-

bolſters,

bolſters of your ſaddle, and hauing paſſed the point of the ſaid peece of leather betwixt your tree and your pannel on the neare ſide, then ſhall you cloſe by the tree ſix inches beneath the head of your ſaddle cutte a ſlitte of an inch long, through the which you ſhall paſſe the point of your foreſaide peece of leather, ſo as you may buckle it about the fore bolſter and forepoint of your ſaddle tree, and then when you will make faſt your piſtoll, drawe out your ordinarie ſtrappe, and paſſe the foreſaide ſtrappe that ſhall remaine in your ſaddle for that purpoſe, and the point thereof through one of the lopes of your piſtoll ſheathe or caſe, then ſhall you buckle it faſt: thus ſhal the head of your piſtoll remaine lower than the head of your ſaddle, ſo as it ſhall not trouble you anie thing at all. And as touching the carrieng of your headpeece, you muſt firſt iuſt in the midle of the creſt thereof, pierce two holes, one an inch from an other, and hauing made faſt a ſtrong thong of leather hungar, or elſe a corde of ſilke, no longer than you maie get your finger vnderneath it, then ſhal you naile a littie iron hooke vpon the out edge of the hinder cantell of your ſaddle tree, fiue inches lower than the middle thereof, ſo as you maie hang your caſke or headpeece thereon: then ſhall you marke where the creſt of your headpeece falles, or hollowe place that goes about your necke, and iuſt againſt that place cut a ſlitte of an inch long through the couering of your ſaddle, cloſe vnder the backeſide of your hinder bolſter, through the which you muſt paſſe a ſtrong girdle or ſtrap of leather, drawing it vnder the tree of your ſaddle, with the point backwards towards your horſes crupper: then ſhal you cut an other ſlitte in the couer of your ſaddle, cloſe by the edge of the tree, and hauing paſſed the point of the foreſaide peece of leather vpwardes, through the foreſaid ſlitte you maie buckle your foreſaide caſke ſo

ſaſt, that if two men had holde thereupon, they ſhould ſo ſone be able to take the ſaddle from your horſe, or throwe him downe, as once be able to moue or ſtirre your foreſaid helmet. And when you woulde put it on your head, you haue no more to do but loſe the foreſaid buckle with your right hand, and liſting your caſke vp it will come cloſe of it ſelfe.

Kingdon.

There remaines yet three things which I doubt of, that is, on which ſide I ſhould hang my piſtoll: and on which ſide I ſhould hang my caſke: and alſo where I ſhall put my hat when I take my headpeece.

Clifford.

Thou troubleſt me much with vaine queſtions, but it is much better to demaunde curiouſly than to preſumme through ignorance. But to the matter which wee haue in hande: Thou ſhalt hang thy piſtoll on the neere ſide with a ſtrappe of leather going vnder the fore point of thy ſaddle tree, and rounde about thy piſtoll caſe, ſo as it ſhall not be able to ſtirre anie waie. And thy bridle hand lying ouer the head thereof ſhall not be able to fall out at anie time: and as touching thy caſke, thou muſt carrie it on the right ſide behinde thy hinder bolſter with the beauer thereof backewardes, and the creaſt vpwardes, ſo as, although thou march all night in the raine, yet ſhall it be drie when thou wouldeſt put it on thy head, this is a much better waie than to hang it at your ſaddle bowe, or to march with it vpon your head, which two waies are ſo troubleſome and painfull, that a number of good ſouldiours thereby doe lacke their caſkes when they come to ſeruice, which thing manie times is the cauſe that they leaue their liues behinde them, or elſe doe

make

make them that they dare not doe ſo much as they might, hauing beene armed on their heads, yea, I neuer account him a good ſouldiour that will ride without his headpeece: nor him a wiſe Captaine of harquebuziers, that will lette his ſouldiours goe without their murrians, ſwordes, and daggers. But to our purpoſe: you ſhall put your hatte in your pocket, or elſe into your breech in at your codpeece: or you may make a ſilke ſtring faſt to the inſide of your hat with a great button vpon the ſame, and hauing putte the foreſaide ſtring vpon your ſaddle bowe, you may drawe your button vp ſo cloſe, that it is not poſſible for you to loſe your hat.

The end of the fourth Booke.

The fift Booke.

The firſt Chapter of Diſeaſes.

Of the colde in the head.

THe ſignes to knowe it be theſe, thy horſes eies and countenance wil be very heauie, & he wil not hold vp his head, not to eate his meate, and there will run at his eies and noſe cleere water. The cure that I haue manie times vſed was in this ſort: put on his head a beggarly biggen, and alſo purge his

head with this medicine: take of brimstone half an ounce finelie beaten in powder, then mingle it well with halfe a pound of fresh butter: and then hauing annointed the points of a couple of goose or swannes feathers, thrust them into his nostrels, but first you must make fast to the two neather endes thereof two threedes, so as you may tie them to the noseband of his bridle, in such sort, that they cannot fall out of his nose, then it shall not be amisse to walke him abroade, if it be warme weather, but if the weather be colde, to walke him in the house, with a man on his backe an houre at the least: then maie you unbridle him and take out the quilles, which being done, wipe cleane his nose, and putte his head into a bottomlesse bagge, hauing tied it fast ouer his eares, with a strappe or corde. And if it be too wide for his head, you maie double it in one side, and pinne it with a pinne of wood close to his head: then take a chafingdish of coales, with frankencense therevpon belde in the foresaide bagge or sacke in such sorte, that the fume thereof maie enter into his nostrels, and hold it so for the space of one quarter of an houre: this is a verie good waie to purge anie horses head, yet would I wishe you to vse it verie seldome, and but vppon verie great occasion.

Of the cough comming of cold.

The signes to knowe it be these, when thy horse drinkes he wil let the water runne out at his nose, and in his coughing he will voide filthie tough fleame at his mouth: to cure it, take of fenegreeke, of galina, of synamon, of saffron, of turnericke, of long pepper, of Anis seede, of licoras, of ech one of them a penyworth, beate al these things togither in a morter,

and

and put them into three pintes of Ale or Beere, and adde therevnto halfe a pinte of hunnie, and hauing made it luke warme, giue it your horse to drinke when he is fasting in the morning, and let him not eate anie meate in fiue houres after. And it shall be good to walke him one halfe houre faire and softlie, so that you driue him not into anie sweat. When you haue brought him into the stable shake litter inough about him, and cloath him with a reasonable warme cloth, so that he sweate not. And take heede that you exercise him euerie daie once vpon a soft trot one houre or two at the least, but see that your exercise be such as he sweate not, for that shal doe your horse more harme than good, yea, I haue many times cured my horse onelie with reasonable exercise, and giuing him grasse to eate, and Fenegreeke in his prouender, which is the surest kind of killing the cough aboue all other.

Another for the same.

TAke of Butter halfe a pound, of Fenegreek as much, of Ellecompane fiue ounces. Hauing beaten your Ellecompane and Fenegreeke to small pouder in a morter with a rolling pinne for that purpose, mingle them all together, and hauing wrought thē well in this sort colde, if then it be not stiffe inough to make it in balls, then may you adde therevnto a little wheat flower, and make it in fiue or eight great bals, and when you will giue them to your horse, holde vp his head as high as you can. Then hauing taken out your horses tongue, with your left hand thrust one of the balls into his throate as farre as you can, & then let his tongue go till he haue swallowed it, thus may you [illegible] him two or three of your bals at once, then may you [illegible] dle him and let him stand one houre, then shall you g[illegible]

him another third part of your medicine as before, and then ſhall you bridle him, and let him ſtand the ſeconde houre. Thus ſhall you giue your horſe his medicins at three ſeuerall times without doing him anie harme, and the third part of the medicine being giuen, let your horſe ſtand three houres more at the bare racke vpon the bit, which will be fiue houres in all, then may you vnbridle him & offer him ſome wet hay to eat, or graſſe if it may be had, & let him not drinke before night, and let his water be warmed with a little grinded mault or wheate bran therein for the ſpace of ten daies.

Of the drie cough.

THe ſignes to knowe it be theſe, he will cough drie drilie, and often, without voiding anie thing either at noſe or mouth. The cure: Take of oile of Baies halfe a pound, of Butter as much, then take of garlike one pound, beate it together vnpilled, and being well beaten with the end of a great cudgell in a diſh, then adde your butter and oile to your garlike, then hauing made it in balls wᵭ wheat flower, giue this medicine to your horſe at fiue ſeuerall times, and let him not eate anie meat til it be night, nor drinke till the next morning, and let him drinke warme water for the ſpace of xv. daies, nor anie drie meat if graſſe may be had, but if you cannot haue graſſe, then duſt his haie well, and wet it in faire water, and let him not eat anie prouender without fenegreeke therein, but if at the xv. daies end his cough amend nothing at all, then it ſhall be good to giue him the foreſaid medicine againe, and to diet him as before xv. daies. I haue neuer dreſſed my horſe with this medicine but ẏ he hath ben cured perfectlie, yet would I not wiſh you to be too buſie in medicining your horſe either with this or anie other, till ſuch time as you find ẏ giuing him graſſe to eate, fenegreeke in his prouender, & reaſonable exer-

ciſe,

ciſe, which is ẏ moſt excellẽſt medicine ẏ euer I found to heale my horſe of all griefes cõming of colde, & is verie good to preſerue him frõ al other ſickneſſe if you vſe him vñ good diet & cleane feeding, as is before taught will not auaile.

Of the fretized, broken, and rotten lungs.

I Haue neuer ſeene anie of thoſe horſes cured, yet I thought good heere to declare mine owne experience herein, for ẏ I haue by the ſpace of thirtie yeares and more ſought with great diligence the cauſes of any ſickneſſe or griefe, & alſo the ſignes how to know it, as well as how to cure ẏ ſame: for in my iudgement there is no diſeaſe perfectly knowen, neither is it poſſible to cure it vnles ẏ cauſe thereof be firſt found out, for otherwiſe in ſeeking to cure your horſe of his diſeaſe, you maye giue him ſuch medicines, exerciſe, & diet, as ſhall not decreaſe his griefe, but rather increaſe the ſame. The cauſe of this diſeaſe, wõut al doubt, cõmeth of extreme gallopping, ſodaine running or leping, or by ſome other ſtraine. It may come alſo by ẏ corruption of the aire, ẏ ſignes to know it be theſe, according to mine owne experience, which I firſt obſerued in a horſe of M. Coles in Somerſet ſheere, which horſe as they ſaid, had the murning of the chyne a long time, & when I came to ſee ẏ horſe, which ran at ẏ noſe with filthy ſtinking water, I iudged him to haue the ſaid murning of the chine, & medicined him therfore with a drench ẏ I had learned for ẏ purpoſe, but after ẏ he had receiued his drench, he neuer eate or drunke anie more but did pant & blow continually for ẏ ſpace of 3. daies, & then being dead, I cut him vp, & found the one quarter of his lungs rotten, & a great part therof conſumed. After which time I held it for a generall rule, not to drench anie horſe ẏ long time had had the murning of ẏ chine, or that continuallie had a ſtinking breath, but onelie to giue them Licoriſe beaten into pouder, and Anniſe

ſeedes

ſeedes whole in his prouender, & giue him graſſe or wet haie to eate, and to purge his head often with franken-ſence, and ſometimes with Euforbium ordered in ſuch ſort as is before taught in the Chapter of the colde of the head, but this is to be noted by the waie, that this horſe did cough alwaies hollowlie and but ſeldome, I had experience alſo in another of thoſe horſes of maiſter Gregorie Prices at Hereford, which horſe was ouer-ridden by a man of his, and afterward hauing a continual cough, & did ſomtime runne at his noſe, which was iudged to be nothing elſe but a colde taken by the foreſaid ouer galloping, but he being drenched to heale him of his foreſaid colde, he neuer ceaſing panting and blowing till he died, and I perceiued his breath to ſtinke, cauſed him to be cut vp, found his lungs rotten, as in the other horſe. In a third horſe alſo I haue had experience at M. Rothero Gwins in Carmarthen ſheere, a gentleman of the Earle of Eſſex, I being then come out of Ireland, & lying at his houſe, one of his ſonnes chaunced to haue a ſtoned nagge verie ſicke, and when I loked on him I iudged him to haue the yellowes, for that both his eies, the inſide of his lips, and vnder his tongue, was all dyed yellow, but as ſoone as I ſmelled to his breath & felt it ſtinke, I tolde him if he gaue him anie medicine he would die, but he requeſted me the more inſtantlie to ſhew him what medicine were beſt for the yellowes, for (quoth he) I had rather haue him die vppon a medicine then vpon his ſickneſſe without anie triall of medicine, wherevpon I taught him to giue his nagge Cumin and hunnie, in ſuch ſort as you may reade in the Chapter of the Yellowes, but he neuer dranke anie more, and the ſecond daie of his ſickneſſe all the inſide of his tongue & lips became of the colour of a peece of tanned leather or drie oaken leaues, and all the white of his eies and inſide of his eie lids loked all verie redde, and his breath

did

did ſtinke moſt horriblie, and the horſe being dead I cut him vp, and found almoſt one halfe of his lungs rotten, but you muſt note by the waie, that this horſe and maſter Gregorie Prices, both toke their griefes with extream & ſodain galopping them, ỹ one in deep and miriſh waies, and the other vpon high mountaines, as I dyd learne moſt certainlie, and the firſt liued halfe a yere after his iourney, & the other but two moneths, all which time it was eaſie to perceiue that they had taken their bane, for ỹ they neuer proſpered after. I haue alſo ſeene a ſoreld courſer of ſir Thomas Scots in Kent that was iudged to haue broken lungs, for that he did cough verie often with great paine, and would alſo grone in his coughing, and it would ſeeme to a man that he had ſomething in his throate, and alſo he would voide white ſparkes of matter as big as a great pins head, and vnder his left eie his head did ſhrinke in, in ſuch ſort, that you might perceiue by the ſaid ſetling and ſhrinking in of his head vnder his eie, that his eie did ſwell out ouer the ſaid ſhrinking, but this horſe liued as I doe remember, aboue foure yeares after that his griefe was perceiued, this horſe died of a ſwelling in the cods, and afterward I cut him vp, and his lungs were ſo faire & ſound as euer I ſaw anie horſe, his liuer was alſo very ſound, but the grief of the horſe was, for that the caule of fat ỹ is vpon the mawe, was growen faſt to the ribs of the horſe on the right ſide, for it was growen verie thicke & hard alſo, & it faſtned it ſelf at one end of the midriſe, or that thin partition that parteth the bellie of the horſe frō his hart, with the foreſaid fat or ſpunges ſubſtance, by meanes whereof the horſes mawe was alwaies tied to the horſes ſides, ſo that I haue euer held it for a generall rule, that that horſe that hath a ſtinking breath, hath alwaies ſome impoſtume or other incurable rotten diſeaſe in his lungs, and that he that groneth in his cough-

ing,and doideth matter at the mouth, hath either his lungs,liuer,cawle,or ſtomacke ſo tied,that they cannot haue their due courſe and mouing. I thought good(gentle Reader) to recite this my ſmall experience in this moſt cruell and perillous diſeaſe,to the end the learned and wiſe may ſearch out how to cure the ſame.

Of the great ſwelling that comes by meanes of the hurt of an euill ſaddle.

IF you chaunce to perceiue it at your bait or at night, when you come to your lodging,then let your ſaddle ſtand faſt girded vpon your horſe till he bee through colde,and dreſſe all the other partes of his bodie, then ſhall you take off your ſaddle and binde a great deale of haie vpon the ſaid ſwelling, and make it faſt with a cloth, with two or three ſullingles buckled on the ſame to holde it faſt. Then cauſe your ſaddle to be amended that it wring him no more in that place,for the wet hay will put awaie the ſwelling, if the ſkinne be not broken, and that you finde it the firſt daie that he beginneth to gaule,but if the inflamation be great, and that it will not goe awaie by meanes of the wet haie, then ſhall you couer all the ſwollen place with Wine lées,& as you ſée it drie,renue it wt freſh lées cõtinuallie vntill the ſwelling be quite gone, which will bée in a verie ſhort ſpace. This is a verie excellent medicine to cure anie griefe that may by anie meanes come through the ſaddle, if your wine lées be thin,then may you thicken them with wheate flower.

Another medicine for the ſame.

MAke a plaiſter of thicke barme ſo great as the ſore,renuing it euerie daie vntill the ſwelling bee all waged,

all waged, and after the ſwelling is cleane gone, if there remaine anie corruption, thē ſlit it downe right through the middle thereof, and cut it ſo deepe in the neather ſide, that there may no matter ſtand in the hollow place, then ſhall you waſh the foreſaid place with vrine, beere, or ale, made ſcalding hot, or ſo hot as you can ſuffer your hand in it, that being done, drie the place by holding a great cloth faſt vppon it, or a Spunge, vntill you haue cleane dried vp all the wet that ſhall there remaine, then couer all the foreſaid place with the pouder of burned Allome, dreſſe him in this ſorte once a daie vntill the fleſh bee growen vp ſo high as is needfull, then ſhal you dreſſe him in this ſorte but once in two or three daies, and if you ſee him ſkin but ſlowlie, then maye you anoint him after that you haue waſhed him, and after the pouder is ſo dried, with Vnguentum album, round about the edges of the ſore, which will cauſe the ſkin to come derie faſt, but if you ſee that with this ſeldome dreſſing and anointing him herewith, there beginneth proude fleſh to growe, then ſhall you take a dramme of Mercurie, and mingle it with an ounce of Vnguentum album and anoint all the ſore place therewith once in two daies. This ſhall correct the proude fleſh, and cauſe it to ſkinne, and heale derie ſodainelie.

Of the Nauell gall.

THis commeth by meanes of the crouppier buckle, for that the ſaddle is to wide behinde, and ſo it ſitteth downe faſt vppon the horſes ridge, and cauſeth a ſwelling or bunch againſt the crouppier buckle of your ſaddle, and I thinke it taketh his name, Nauell gall, for that it is right againſt the nauell of the

horſe, but howſoeuer the name is deriued I knowe not, well I wot it is verie pœuiſh to cure, therefore muſt you take a ſharpe knife and cut awaie all the corrupt fleſh, and waſh it and caſt pouder on it, as is before taught in the former Chapter.

Of the Farcion.

THis commeth of abundaunce of corrupt bloud, or by ſtanding with other horſes that hath the lyke diſeaſe, for it is verie infectious. The ſignes to knowe it be theſe: It beginneth alwayes vppon a veine, and it breaketh forth into many little knottes or braunches, which wil breake out and run with matter verie filthie to beholde. The cure: Let him bloud the firſt daie on one ſide of his necke, and the ſeconde or third daie on the other ſide. After you haue let him bloud the firſt time, cut a ſlit in his forehead of an inch long, foure inches beneath the rootes of the haire of his fore toppe, ſo that the ſlit may bee iuſt in the middle of his forehead, that beeing done, with a Cornet, raſe all the ſkinne from the horſes forehead euen vppe to his foretoppe, then ſhall you put therin a docke roote of two or three inches long, beeing firſt made cleane and lightlie bruſed with a hammer or cudgell, and let it remaine in his head a moneth, and ſee that you thruſt out the matter once a daie, and take heede you thruſt not out the roote, but if ſo be it will not tarrie in, then may you with a ſhoomakers threed thruſt through both ſides of the ſlit, tie it ſo faſt that ỹ roote cannot fal out, or els you may make faſt the roote by putting the foreſaid ſhoomakers end, through the ſkin of his forehead, & through the middle

middle of the rote an inch aboue the ſlitte, which being tied faſt, will holde the rote that it cannot fall out, and it is a much better waie than the other, for that the matter may haue free iſſue: you ſhall alſo burne with a hote yron round about al the ſore places: then ſhal you burne all the foreſaide buttons, with a blunt yron of the bigneſſe of your little finger, ſo deepe vntill you ſee ſee the white matter ſpring out about the point of your yron: that being done, ſharpe the point of the foreſaid yron and crooke it a little an inch from the point, ſo that when you thruſt it through the horſes ſkinne, the point may alwaies turne outward from the fleſh: then ſhall you take holde of the ſkinne with a paire of pinſors, and pull it cleane from the fleſh, then paſſe the yron through, ſo that the holes made with the yron may be foure or fiue inches one from an other: that being done, annoint al the burnt places with ſope, and dreſſe him no more for the ſpace of foure or fiue daies: In which time, you muſt prepare a good quantitie of ſtrong pille; with the which you muſt waſh him euerie daie, the pille being firſt made ſcalding hote, ſee that you rubbe him well vntill it be readie to bleede, then hauing dried all the ſore places, throwe on the powder of vnſlaked lime, or burnt allum, which will heale much better than lime. And if you ſee that in anie of the ſores, through negligent dreſſing, there riſeth proude fleſh ſo high that you can not correct it ſufficiently with the foreſaide powder, then may you burn anie ſuch place ſo ſore or ſorer as you did at ꝑ firſt, and dreſſe it as before, and take heed that you giue your horſe nothing but ſtrawe to eate, vntil he be whole, and let him haue ſo little reſt as may be: for letting him bloud, then diet and reaſonable exerciſe with the docke rote in his forehead, is ſufficient to heale anie horſe, if you dreſſe him in this ſort at the firſt beginning of his diſeaſe, without purging or burning him, but if it be

olde you muſt both purge and burne him, as hath beene before taught: I haue founde ſome horſes that haue had this diſeaſe in one of their legges, and by euill dwelling and long delaying, the humours haue had ſo great recourſe, that when I haue healed his legge, as is before taught, in one place, it hath broken out in an other, which horſe I haue cured in this ſorte, I haue firſt cut a ſlit of an inch long through the ſkinne of his bellie. vnder the middle thereof, and raſed the ſkinne round about with a cornet from the fleſh ſo farre as I could reach with the ſame. Then haue I put in a roll of leather with a hole in the middle: And in like manner haue I made an iſſue vnder the point of the ſhoulder of the grieued legge, which two iſſues with that on his forehead, I haue let runne continually til ſuch time as he was healed: preſently after that I had made the two laſt iſſues, I haue burned all his legge with long ſtrikes from his bodie, euen downe to the houfes, diſtant no more one from an other, but the breadth of an inch: and take heede that your yron, when you will burne anie horſe in this ſorte be not vpon the edge no thicker than the breadth of a ſtrawe: and note, that in burning anie horſe, that you beginne alwaies aboue, and drawe your hand downeward with the haire, and that you burne him ſo deepe that you ſee the ſkinne looke browne. In this ſorte haue I cured a horſe in Paris of the Marſhall Birons that all the beſt horſeleaches that they coulde get, had burned him, purged him, dieted him, practiſed their medicines, and hanged there ſorcerie writings or inchantments about his neck: thus did they torment the poore beaſt for the ſpace of one whole yeare, in ſuche ſorte, that it woulde haue grieued anie mannes heart to haue ſeene him, yea, and when they had giuen him ouer: and ſolde the Marſhall, that it was vnpoſſible to cure him, he wil-

willed me to commaunde him to be carried out of the Cittie and be killed. But then I vndertake my ſelfe to cure him, with no ſmall enuie of all the dogge leaches of Paris, who often times did ſaie behinde my backe, that when I hadde healed that horſe, they would loſe their heades: But GOD to whome all glorie is due, ſo bleſſed me, that I healed him within the ſpace of fiue moneths, which thing I did greately eſteeme for my credites ſake: yea, I was ſo carefull I woulde neuer let anie man dreſſe him, although I had two farriers at my commaundement, who woulde verie willingly haue dreſſed him, if I woulde: but my horſe beeing cured perfectly of this diſeaſe, the dogge leaches beganne to triumph, ſaying: though you haue cured him yet you can not make his legge ſo ſmall as it was, but I alſo ſtopped their mouthes, for I made his legge ſo ſmall as euer it was, in this ſorte heere following: I laide a plaiſter vppon his legge made of wine Lees, and wheate flower, and rolled it with a long roll, of three fingers broade, of eight or tenne foote long, made of ſoft Cotten: In this ſorte did I make his legge ſmall in the ſpace of foure moneths. During this cure I neuer failed my iourney, and trauelled the foreſaide horſe at my pleaſure without anie trouble or hinderaunce, ſaue that I made his groome to carrie his roll and plaiſter in a little ſacke made for that purpoſe, and alſo an ore bladder full of wine Lees, with the which I dreſſed him preſently as ſone as I came to my lodging, and ſo taking it awaie the next morning, I made the keeper to rub his leg clean: with this medicine haue I healed diuers horſes that haue had great legs, but two of ỹ moſt notableſt that euer I cured in England were, the one at M. Barnard Drakes in Deuonſhire. The other was at

Maiſter

Maiſter Henrie Pooles in Glouceſter ſhire. The horſe of Maiſter Barnard Drakes, after that he had beene tormented by cutting, burning, and mangling him, he had turned him out to paſture for a iade to get colts, by reaſon of his great leg, for that it was ſo ſtiffe, that he could not bow it. This Maiſter Barnard Drake can well remember, for that it is not aboue tenne yeares paſt. And the horſe that I healed of Maiſter Henrie Pooles, Sir Iohn Tracie, and Maiſter Throckmorton knoweth well of this cure, for that I did it in their houſes, where I detained the horſe with me aboue three quarters of a yeare, where diuers were of the opinion, that I ſhould neuer cure him: yet I was not thereby diſcouraged, but the more they did doubt, the more diligent was I, and within the ſpace before ſaide, I healed him beyond all expectation. This is not much aboue ſix yeres paſt, and the horſe is yet liuing, which is to be ſeene without anie lameneſſe or blemiſh in his legge: but after that I had made all the reſt of his legge ſmall that remained in the ſplint place vnder his knee, where his man had firſt dreſſed or medecined him, and other horſeleaches which had him in hand before, left him with a bunch almoſt as bigge as an egge, and as hard as anie ſplint or ſpauen, but I driue that awaie with this ſeare cloth heere vnder written: Take of virgin Wax half a pound, of Myrhe one pounde, of Reaſins a pounde, of Galbanum halfe a pounde, of Coſtus fiue ounces, of Armontacke fiue ounces, of Swines greace or Hogs morſe two poundes, put your Hogs greace firſt in an earthen pot, and hauing placed it in a broade cauldron ful of water, then make a ſoft fire vnder it to the ende that your water may boile, and when you perceiue your Swines greace almoſt melted, then ſhall you putte in all your other ſimples ſaue the Coſtus: and when you perceiue them to be al molten, which wil aſke fiue or ſixe houres

boiling

boiling at the least, then your Costus which is a white roote, being beaten into powder, you shall adde to the foresaide thinges after it is taken from the fire, and mingle them well together with the same sticke or instrument that you stirred it withall, the whiles that the foresaide thinges are a melting: then make a plaister thereof vpon a peece of sheepes leather something bigger than the sore: note, that one of these plaisters will serue thirtie daies with a verie little refreshing the same sometimes, but you muste take it off euerie daie once, and rubbe his legge verie well, for feare least it itch, which may cause your horse to beate and stampe with his foote, bite and teare in suche sorte as it shall cause the swelling to increase. Also you must take great heede, that you roll not nor tie his legge to straight, for by letting him stand to straight, tied fire houres, it may doe him more harme than your medicine hath done hym good in fire weekes before. And it shall be good once in fiue or sixe daies to ride him into the water, and walke him an houre at the least. And as sone as hee comes in, and that his legge is well rubbed with straw, and hauing first warmed your seare cloth ouer a fewe coales, which you must haue on a fire shouell for that purpose, before you doe laie it vnto the sore, but if it chaunce the griefe be in such parte of the legge as your roll and plaister will alwaies settle downewardes, then must you make a long rounde roll of woollen cloth as bigge as a thumb rope, and you must sowe at eache ende thereof a peece of strong canuas a hand broade, and two foote long, and made sharpe at the two endes; and when you will roll his legge set one ende of the canuas vnder your foote, and then hauing rolled his legge somewhat aboue the vpper edge of his plaister, then shall you bring the two endes togither vppon the middle of the

roll, ſo as you may tie them bothe togither, in ſuche ſorte, as the knotte may not touch the horſes legge, for if you ſhoulde not tie the two endes togither, the roll woulde winde loſe about his legge. This will holde your plaiſter in the due place, without being able to ſincke or ſettle downe: and you may roll his legge a great deale more eaſier therewith than with anie other.

Of the ſcabbe or mangineſſe in a horſe.

THis cruell kinde of ſcabbe, ſcurffe, or itch, breeding ouer all the horſes bodie, and moſt commonlye beginnes in his mane and taile, it commeth of a corrupt bloud, and needeth no other ſignes. The cure: Let him bloud the firſt daie on one ſide of his necke, and waſh all his bodie with hote brine, or elſe with beefe broth, pitch, and ſalt mingled together, rubbing him with rough wadde of ſtraw till he be readie to bleede: then ſhall you let him alone till the ſecond daie, and then ſhall you let him bloud on the other ſide of his necke, which being done, and all his bodie rubbed with rough wadde and made cleane, you ſhall take of Swines greace a pound, of blacke Sope as much, of Rape oile a pinte, of brimſtone fiue ounces finely beaten into powder, and hauing firſt killed your Muſcle ſiluer, mingle all theſe thinges togither vppon a ſoft fire, without letting it boile, being ſo warme as you can ſuffer your hand in it, annoint all the ſore places therewith, and rubbe and chafe it well with your handes to make it ſincke into the ſkinne. And if you ſee the horſe rubbe or bite him ſelfe in anie place of his bodie, you may waſh it as before, and annoint it with ſome of the foreſaid medicine, I haue cured diuers horſes

here-

herewith without ointing them twice, but you muſt (during this cure) diet your horſe verie ſlenderly, and let him haue ſo little reſt as may be.

Of the griefe in the eies: and firſt of him that hath receiued a blowe.

IF your horſe haue receiued a blowe in, or vppon his eie ſo that he can not holde open the ſame: and that there is no blemiſh nor white filme doth appeare vpon his eie, then ſhall you remedie him in this ſorte. Take faire water and ſalt, and with your mouth ſpoute his eie full thereof, and if his eie be not verie ſore this ſhall remedie him, it is good alſo to wette a cloth therein, ſo bigge as will fill the horſes eare on the greeued ſide: Then chafing it, thruſt it in ſo faſt as is poſſible, you muſt tie his eare faſt, ſo as the cloth may not fall out, and let it remaine therein the ſpace of a whole daie at the leaſt: honie alſo warmed a little, and put in his eie, is not onelie good to make him open his eie, but will alſo preuent anie other griefe that might breede vpon the horſes eie, by meanes of the foreſaide ſtripe.

Of the white filme, pearle, or web that may breed on the ſight of a horſes eie.

TAke honie as before, and put it in his eie with a feather, if the filme be but thinne, that will remedie him, or elſe take the iuice of Celandine, and put to a ſpoonefull thereof, halfe a ſpoonefull of womans milke, but if the filme be olde, ſo that it will not breake, then take the powder of burned Allume, being well burned and finely beaten, blowe a little

thereof with a quill into his eie, and take heede when you will dreſſe him in this ſort, that you tie his head faſt to ſome poſt, in ſuch ſorte, that hee can not ſtirre, for by dreſſing your horſe when he is loſe, hee may ſtrike his eye vppon the ende of your quill, in ſuch ſorte that you ſhall doe him more harme in one moment than your medicine ſhall doe him good in a moneth, this is an approued medicine, not onelie for the forenamde greefe, but alſo for anie other that ſhall breede in the horſes eie: but if ſo be that your horſe haue a filme ouer his eie ſo thicke, that it will not breake with blowing this powder in his eie, then muſt you caſt your powder in, and fill his eie full thereof once a daie, and hauing filled it, let him ſtand ſtill, holding his eie open with your two thumbs, by the ſpace of one halfe houre, till the allume be melted, then let him riſe and dreſſe him in this ſort, but once a daie for the ſpace of two or three daies, and then bliolue it in his eie, as before. And if at anie time you ſee the inſide of his eie liddes to be red, then ſhall you dreſſe him with honie for the ſpace of two or three daies, and then dreſſe him again with your allum til he be whole.

Of the canker in the eie.

TAke of Woodbine leaues, of Primroſe leaues, of Sage leaues, of Violet leaues, and of Roſemarie, each one a handfull, and of Allume halfe a pound, boile all thoſe things togither in three gallons of faire water, till two parties thereof be conſumed, and when it is boiled enough, ſtraine it through a cloth into a faire veſſel, and adde thereunto half a pinte of honie, and then ſhall you boile it againe the ſpace of one quarter of an houre vpon a ſoft fire: Then adde thereunto halfe a pinte of ſtrong Vineger. The ſignes to knowe it be

these, his eie will be redde, and round about the same it will be full of little knots or buttons, as bigge as the heads of pins, and also it wil runne of filthie & stinking matter. The cure: Let him bloud in the vaine beneath his eie, and also in his necke vaine on the greeued side, and then wash him twice a daie with this water heere following, and with a fine linnen cloth dip it therin, it being first made bloud or milke warme.

Another for the same.

TAke Sage, Fennell, & Rosemarie, of each a handfull, of Allome two ounces, boile all these things together in two gallons of faire water, till one halfe thereof be consumed, then straine it through a faire cloth, & being strained, adde thereunto fiue spoonfulls of hunnie, and boile it a little vppon a soft fire, as hath beene before taught in the last Chapter, and wash his eie therewith twice a daie with a faire lynnen cloth.

The Canker in the nose.

THe signes to know it be these, his nose will stinke and runne with matter. The cure. Let him bloud in the necke vaine, the temple vaine, and in the vaine vnder his eie, then take the water, as it is in the last Chapter sauing one, and squirt it into his nose twice a daie, and take heede that your squirt bee long, for if it be but short, you shall not be able to reach the vppermost part of the sore therewith, and then shal it be vnpossible to cure him, and as touching the length, make it not aboue fiue or eight inches at the most.

Of the Canker in the mouth.

The ſignes to know it be theſe, his tongue will be all full of bliſters, & within two or three daies when the bliſters are broken, it will be full of hollowe deepe rawe pits, and alſo the inſide of his lips for companie will be rawe in like ſort, & the outſide of his mouth and lips will be full of little pimples. The cure: Take of Sage and Roſemarie, each one a handfull, of Alloms a quarter of a pound, boile all theſe together in a ſufficient quãtity of faire water, being almoſt boiled inough, adde thereunto halfe a pinte of honny, waſh him therewith twice a daie, and give him not anie thing to eate but cleane ſtraw, till he be whole, for there is not anie kinde of Canker, Fiſtula, great impoſtumation, farcion, ſcab, or mangineſſe, eaſilie cured, vnleſſe that you firſt let bloud well, purge ſtronglie, and keepe ſharp diet, and that the ſame be verie cleane, ſweete, and wholeſome.

Of hurt in the tongue that may come with the bit.

Cleanſe the wound with a faire cloth, and anoint it with honnie twice a daie, this will heale him, note that for anie griefe that may be in a horſes mouth, after you haue dreſſed him, that you let him ſtand three or foure houres vppon the bit, and not eating.

Of the Staggards.

This is a paine in the head and braines of the horſe, the ſignes to knowe it be theſe, the horſe will refuſe his meate and hang downe his head, and he will winke with his eies almoſt cloſe together, and many times you

ſhall

ſhall ſée him hold his head cloſe to the wall or manger. The cure. Let him bloud in the necke vaine, that being done, cut a ſlit in his forehead, raiſe vp the ſkinne, and put a docke rote therein, as before taught in the Chapter of the Farcion, and let it remaine therein the ſpace of twentie daies at the leaſt. This medicine will alſo heale the Yallowes, if it be taken at the firſt beginning of his ſicknes, but if he be far gone therewith, it ſhall be needfull to giue him the drench hereafter following in the Chapter of the Yallowes.

Of the Yeallowes.

THis proceeds of abundance of cholar ouer-flowing the bladder of the gall, & ſo is turned into the vaines of the horſe, and will in ſhort ſpace cauſe all his ſkinne to looke yeallow. The ſignes to knowe it be theſe, the horſe will be faint, and in his trauailing he will ſweat much more than he was accuſtomed, the whites of his eyes will be yeallow, and alſo the inſide of his lips and tongue, and vnder his tongue will be died yeallowe alſo, and his taile will be yeallowe. The cure. Let him bloud in the neck vaine two or thrée quartes, or as much as you thinke he may well beare, which you ſhall beſt knowe by the ſtrength of your horſe, which thing muſt be your rule therein. Then you ſhall take a quart of ale or béere, and adde therevnto fiue or ſixe ſpoonefulls of honnie, thrée or foure ounces of Cumnin ſéede finelie beaten into pouder, then take a good handfull of time, chop it ſmal with a knife and beate it well in a morter, then put it vnto the foreſayd things, and with a ſoffe fire make it ſo hot, as your honnie may be throughlie moulten, but I would wiſh you to keepe it hot in this ſorte vpon a ſoft fire, the ſpace of two houres at the leaſt, without letting it boile. Thē ſhal you ſtraine it through

a faire cloth into ſome veſſell fit for that purpoſe, and hauing throwen awaie that ſhall remaine of your Cummin ℈ Time, then ſhall you giue your horſe this drench being no more but luke warme, and let him drinke but a little thereof at once, for by giuing your horſe greate hornes full or ſodaine gulfing of it into him too hot, you may kill anie ſicke horſe: with this drench I haue healed aboue an hundred horſes, that many of them haue bene thought vncurable, but one of the moſt notableſt that euer I did cure, was at Lamſpha at the Earle of Eſſex his houſe, that ſtandeth next to Milford hauen in Wales, this horſe was one Cuttles, ſeruaunt to the Lord Admirall, and then maiſter of the George, a ſhip of the Earle of Eſſex, then in the hauen of Milford, this Cuttle came to me one morning, where I was then riding, and made his moane that he had a great iourney to goe, and that his horſe was like to die, for (quoth he) he hath eaten no meate this daie, neither can I find anie man that knowes his diſeaſe, for he will not ſturre (quoth he) out of his place, nor being laide downe is able to riſe, and whē you force him to go, he cannot go right forward but ſidewaie, by reaſon he is not able to holde his necke right, but hanging it downe croketh it towards his left ſide, and when I ſawe him I perceiued by the yeallows of his eyes, and the inſide of his lips and tongue, and by the feeble drawing of his legs after him, that he had the yeallowes, but I doubting what might make him holde his head on the one ſide, I firſt cauſed him to be raked ℈ afterward I gaue him a gliſter made with whay and ſallet Oile, and put a docke rote in his forehead, for that I thought he had the ſtaggards, I did alſo let him bloud in both the necke vaines foure quartes, which was very much for anie horſe, but in great extremitie extreame meanes are to be vſed, and afterward hauing giuen him this drench, I bridled him and let him ſtand at the rack

ſire

fiue houres, & then offering him a little wet hay, he dyd eat as wel as euer he did in all his life, although he was ſo weak when he toke his drench, that I was forced to make foure men holde him vp with two leauers vnder his bellie.

Of the foundred horſe.

THis commeth by meanes of extreame colde vppon ſome great heate, either when you let your horſe drinke in ſome ſhalow water, it may come alſo by letting him ſtand in the colde winde or in wet ground, or vpon colde pauement, when your horſe is extreame hot, yea, I haue foundred an horſe of mine owne in Brillow, trauailing no more then ordinarie iourney paſe, by taking off my ſaddle to haue it ſtuft preſently as I came into my lodging, through the negligence of my boy, whō I commaunded to lay my cloake vpon his backe whiles he got the ſaddle ſtuft, but he deceiued me, and I comming forth within the ſpace of an halfe houre, hauing haſt in my iouruey, found my horſe vnclothed, & alſo in that caſe that he would eate no meate, and demanding of the Oſtler whether he would eate his meate at the firſt vnbrideling or no, he anſwered that he did eate it with great appetite, but after his ſaddle was taken off and he a little colde, he beganne to refuſe his meate as though he had ſome greeuous ſickneſſe, then I offered him bread and Dates, but he would not eate anie thing. I cauſed him preſētlie, my ſaddle being ſtuft, to be made readie, and hauing him lead in the hand out of the Citie, I perceiued him at his firſt comming out of the ſtable, to complaine a little in one of his fore feete, then I dyd ſurelie perſwade my ſelfe, as ignorant men doe in ſodaine and vnknowen calamities, that ſurelie my horſe was bewitched, for that though the weather were colde,

yet I had trauailed but moderatlie & the horſe nothing hot to account of, and alſo was leane and well acquainted with trauaile, for that I had ridden him vppon the ſelfe ſame iourney aboue three hundred miles, which was the reaſon that did perſwade me that my horſe could not be ſicke of anie griefe, but by ſome extraordinarie meanes, hauing then twelue miles to ride, and being late withall, I forced him to goe, and after foure miles trauaile he left his halting being throughly warmed, and being come to my iourneis end, I cauſed him to be wel dreſſed, but he would not eate anie thing, and doubting what griefe hee had, for ý no man could perſwade me that it was poſſible to founder an horſe on that ſort, I would not let him drinke that night, and the next morning hauing watered him, and commaunding my boie to leade him out, I perceiued then that he was foundred, for that he did not halt on one leg onelie, but he was ſo grieued in all his legs that I had much to do to force him to go, then it repented me that I let him drinke, and I began my cure in forme following: I firſt let him bloud in the necke vaine two quartes, and reſeruing that bloud in a veſſell for the purpoſe, I added thereto a pinte of ſtrong vineger, and ten or twelue egs ſhells and all, and foure ounces of bole Armoniacke finelie beaten to pouder, & hauing mingled all theſe things together, I toke ſo much wheate flower as did thicken the ſame, and hauing wrought it wel together cold with a ſticke, I made two garters a foote and an halfe of length, and one hand broade, and hauing couered them well in the middle, of ſuch length as might go round about the horſes leg with the aforeſaid medicine, I bound them faſt on the horſes foure legs, hard aboue the knées, & let them remaine there twelue houres, then with the foreſaid charge I charged all the horſes loines, buttocks, hippes, backe, and ſhoulders againſt the haire, and hauing

ning ſet him in the ſtable the ſpace of 12. houres, then I loſed his garters and forced him to goe, & after he was walked one houre vpon the ſand ground, I offered him a litle wet hay, & gaue him no drink, in 24. houres repenting me not a litle that I had let him drink ỹ morning before I knew he was foundred, but the 24. houres being expired, I gaue him to drinke, & alſo ỹ ſame daie I cauſed him to be dreſſed with an olde combe, and turned him to graſſe, ỹ third morning going to ſée my horſe and two mo with me, we could ſcarcelie all three catch him, which was not a little ſtrange to M. Trockmorton, who tolde me within foure daies riding in his parke, that the horſe was ſo luſtie that he began to runne and fling ſo as he thought meruailous ſtraunge, for neither he nor anie other that ſaw him foure daies before would haue giuen me one ſhilling for him, and ſome would haue had a pennie therof abated, yet thought it an hard bargaine, note that I medecined this horſe within 24. houres after he was foũdred, yet becauſe I wold haue no man to doubt to cure his horſe with this medecine ỹ ſhall be aboue 24. houres before he can haue him dreſt, I thought good to ſhew you what cure I did once vpon a horſe of M. George Deuoraxes at Hereford Caſt, which horſe was firſt M. Vggans of Bulſon by Milford hauen in Wales, who foundred the foreſaid horſe in his iourney he made to Hereford with M. George Deuorax, who finding mée there, demaunded of me whether I could cure ỹ foreſaid gelding or no, for ỹ he was then fiue daies foundred, lying on the ground not able to ſtand, & had beaten all the ſkin of both his huckle bones wt lying, not being able to ſtand or moue otherwiſe thã he was lifted with leauers put vnder his bellie. This M. G. Deuorax after he had giuẽ M. Vggans a pipe of white wine for ỹ horſe, which was worth 12. pounds, I let him bloud ỹ 6. day 3. quarts in his neck vaine, & made my medicine, & dieted & exerci-

him in the ſelfe ſame order, but I was longer curing this horſe than the other of mine owne, for that it was 15. daies before he began to finde his feete, all the which time I cauſed him to bee exerciſed two houres in the morning, and as much at night, by walking him in a mans hand, and another following with a cudgell: thus did I cure this horſe perfectlie beyond all expectation, where my ſelfe alſo doubted.

Of the bots or wormes in a horſe.

There be foure kindes of wormes that breede in a horſes belly, but the worſt of them and moſt dangerous, is the trenchions or grubs, for ſo they are named in ſome parts of England, I call this kind worſt, for that they moſt commonlie both in the mawe & fundament of a horſe will ſticke faſt like tiekes on a dogs eare, as I did once ſee in a horſe at ſir Thomas Scots in Kent, that after he had beene drenched three ſeuerall times within the ſpace of fiue daies, in all which time he did not eate anie meate, and after he was dead I preſentlie cut him vp, and found aboue fiue hundred trenchions in the toppe of his ſtomacke, all knit together, and not one of them dead. Alſo in the end of the great gut that goeth from the ſtomacke to the horſes bellie was full of the wormes. Alſo then I learned perfectlie that the horſe had had Sauine giuen him, Rewe, Brimſtone, and baie Salt, all in a drench, and alſo ſtrong lee made of aſhes, with the which the horſes ſtomacke was almoſt full, and yet the cruell forenamed wormes dyd hang ſo faſt in the toppe of his ſtomacke, that the medicine could doe them no harme, and they had not eaten anie holes either through mawe or guts, but what kindes of wormes ſo euer your Horſe haue,

haue, you ſhal perfectly cure him as hereafter foloweth: the ſignes to knowe it be theſe: the horſe will kicke and beate with his taile, he will alſo looke towardes his bellie, and ſtrike at his bellie with his hinder foote: ſome horſes will alſo lie downe and wallowe. The cure: Take of ſweete Milke one quarte, and giue it your horſe to drinke: and hauing letten him ſtand foure houres brideled, then ſhall you giue him this drench. Take of Ale or Beere two quartes, and put therein half a pound of Sope, as much Butter, Brimſtone finely pounded or beaten into powder, a good handful of Salt, two or three ſpoonefulles of chimney Soote finely beaten into powder, or otherwiſe it will cauſe your horſe to cough a long time: and hauing molten your Butter and Sope vpon a ſoft fire, and let your drench cole till it be no more than luke-warme, then ſhall you giue your horſe a pinte thereof to drinke: then bridle your horſe, and walke him a quarter of an houre. Thus ſhal you giue your horſe his drinke at foure ſeuerall times without anie danger. But if your horſe be extreame ſicke, I woulde wiſh you to make the foreſaide things in balles with wheate flower, and giue it him at foure or fiue ſeuerall times, as before, this is much better than to drench your horſe if he be extreame ſicke.

Of the griefe in the legs of a horſe: and firſt of the wrench in the ſhoulder.

THis commeth of ſome daungerous ſlipping or ſliding, ſodaine ſtopping, it may alſo come by falling on the planckes, or on ſome ſlipperie ground: The ſignes to know it be theſe: the horſe wil halt verie much, and in his going vpon rough ground you ſhall perceiue it beſt, for he will be forced to go on three legges, by reaſon that hee is not able to liſt his

legge, or to bring it forward, but wil bring it after him. The cure. Let him bloud in the breaſt veine. Then ſhall you with an yron of two ſote of length, ſharpe at the point, with a hole therein, like a drawing naile, paſſe a ruell of haire from the fore point of the ſhoulder vp euen to the top of his withers, and then paſſing it ouerthwart the ſide of his wythers or ſpade bone of the ſhoulder, you ſhall bring it downewarde by the hinder edge of his ſhoulder, euen to the vpper ioint of his forelegge, and there hauing put it out the ſpace of two or three inches, you ſhal drawe it through forward till you come within two or three inches of your firſt place where you ſhal make the two endes thereof faſt: in this ſort ſhal you ruel your horſes ſhoulder round about, but you muſt at euerie eight inches or halfe foote leaue it two or three inches without the ſkinne, then muſt you ſtirre the ruel once a daie, and if the iſſue become ſo ſtraight that you cannot thruſt out the matter, you may with a lancet or point of a razor cut them vnder. This being done, ſet a patten ſhoe on the ſounde leg, which patten ſhoe would be turned round ſo as the horſe can not ſtand on the ſame, but ſhall thereby be forced continually to ſtand vpon his ſore legge, to let the corruption that it ſhal not be able to enter the ioint of his ſhoulder, & let him reſt for the ſpace of xv. or xx. daies with a paire of paſturnes vpon his forefeete, and litter vnder him, for feare leaſt he ſlide vpon ỹ plancks, & at the xv. days end begin to walke him once a day, the ſpace of halfe an houre faire and ſoftly. And hauing obſerued this order xv. daies more, then may you take off his patten ſhoe, and trie whether he go ſound or not, and if he go not ſound, it ſhall be good to ſet it on againe, & to exerciſe him as before, & ſtir the ruels euery day once, for the ſpace of a moneth or fiue weekes, then may you take out your ruel, if he go ſound. I neuer ſawe anie

horſe

horse dressed in this sort, but that he hath beene cured perfectly of his griefe.

Of the shoulder pight.

THis commeth of some dangerous slide or slip backward, so as the horses leg slips backward, and therby driues his shoulder cleane out of the ioint. The signes to know it be these. The bone will sticke out on that shoulder a great deale farther than the other, and he will not be able to set it to the ground. The cure. Laie straw inough vnder him in his roome, and put a paire of straight pasturnes on his forefeete, and another paire on his hindfeet, then hauing throwne him downe, hang him vp from the ground with two ropes, to put the bone into his place, then hauing let him downe faire and softly, lose the fore pasturne of his sound legge, and with a rod before you let him rise, tie the lame leg to the foot of the manger so short, as in his rising he shal be forced to holde his legge before him, for feare of putting his shoulder out of ioint, and let him stand so tied for the space of three daies, and presently when he is vp burne al the point of his shoulder with a hote yron cheker-wise a ful foot square at the least, & let euerie streake be no more than one inch distant one from another: And hauing burned him well, charge all these burned places, and al the rest of his shoulder, with Pitch, Rozen, and Tar, molten togither, and laide on something hote, with a cudgels ende, and when you haue couered it ouer once, then clap presently vpon it Towe or Flare, being first chopped with a hatchet. Then charge him once more vpon the Towe, and at the three daies end lose his foote, and put a paire of pasturnes vpon his feete, and let him neither lie downe, nor stirre out of the stable for the space of fiftene or twentie daies, then

may

may you leade him abroade, and ſee whether he goe well or no, and if he goe not ſound, you may let him reſt as much more.

Of the ſpleeting in the ſhoulder, or renting the ſhoulder from the breaſt of the Horſe.

This commeth by meanes of ſome daungerous ſlide, either vpon the plankes or vpon the ſide of a banke, ſo as one of the horſes legges ſlips awaie and rents his ſhoulder from his briſcot, not on the ſkinne but on the fleſh, ſo as the horſe halteth. The ſignes to knowe it bee theſe: he will drawe his legge, and not be able to lifte or bring it forward, and he will ſometime halt ſo little that you can ſcarce perceiue it, and at other times he will be verie lame, but chieflie when you ride downe a hill, or vpon hard ground, then he will halt much more than vpon the ſoft or plaine ground. Alſo when yuu turne him in a little ring vpon the græued ſide, he will goe verie lame. The cure. Put a paire of ſtraight paſturnes vpon his fore feet during this cure, and hauing firſt letten him bloud in the great vaine on ẏ inſide of his grieued legge, then ſhall you take of Dile of Baies, of Sallet Dile, butter, and Swines greaſe, of each halfe a pound, melt all theſe things together, and anoint all your horſes ſhoulder therwith, being ſo warme as you can ſcarce ſuffer your hand in it. Anoint alſo betweene his fore legs, and euen vp to his withers, ſo as you leaue no part of his ſhoulder vnanointed, & dreſſe him euerie daie once in this ſort, til your medicine be al ſpent, but within 2. or 3. daies you ſhal ſee ſwelling appeare betwixt his legs, & all the reſt of his breaſt & ſhoulder therabouts wil begin to ſwell, his fore leg alſo will ſwell, yea, I haue dreſſed diuers horſes in this ſort, ẏ their bellies ſwelled ſo great,

that

that I haue beene forced to lay wet hay with a couple of ſurcingles, iuſt before the ſhafte of the horſe to defend the ſwelling from his roddes, and yet the ſwelling hath all gone awaie of it ſelfe without comming to a head or breaking. But if it chaunce to come to a head, you may ſlit it with a razor, and heale it, by thruſting a teint of flaxe or towe in it, being firſt dipped in this ſalue here following. Take of Turpentine, of Honie, of Hogſgreace, and of Ware and ſheeps Suet, of eache a like quantitie, melt all theſe things togither, and apply it as before. This is a verie good ſalue to heale anie wound that may happen on a horſe, yea I haue cured my ſelfe diuers hurts therewith without anie other medicine, ſauing warme white Wine to waſh the wound withall. But to our purpoſe: Thou ſhalt let thy horſe ſtand ſtill, without once moouing him, for the ſpace of three weeks or a moneth, the longer the better, and at the firſt walking him abroad, take heede that he be rough ſhod. And that you leade him not vpon anie ſlipperie grounde for feare of hurting him. And although he go verie ſound, yet would I not aduiſe you to ſtirre him in fifteene daies more.

Of the wrenching or ſplint in the two ſhoulders of a horſe.

I Haue in my life time ſeene but one of theſe horſes, and he was one Maſter George Deueriſhes, who then laie at Lampha, and I being at his houſe, he inſtantly requeſted me to looke on the ſaide horſe, and to ſee whether I could cure him or not, but when I had enquired the cauſe thereof, they tolde me that they had poked him in the head of a cart, with the which they did gather tything corne. And the horſe being vnacquainted with

that kind of trauel, he, for lacke of vſe, or elſe, through negligence of the gouernoures thereof, fell vppon the ſide of a bancke, and the horſes drewe him a good waie vnder the carte, ſo as he was neither able to riſe, nor ſtande, but being lifted vp, he would wreſtle and fall on the one ſide or other, by reaſon he was not able to bring his legs forward, but I doubting whether his ſhoulders were wrenched out of ioint, or rend from his brikot, laide good ſtore of ſtrawe vnder him, and caſt him therevppon, and with foure paſturnes pulled him vppe from the ground to put his ſhoulders in their iointes, which was a verie good waie, if they had beene out, but whether they had beene out or no, I haue tolde you both the cauſe and ſignes thereof truely. And the waie whereby I cured him perfectly here foloweth: I did firſt cutte a couple of holes through the ſkinne, foure inches vnder his toe, ſhoulder ioints, or points of ſhoulder, and with a quill I bleiwe vppe all the ſkinne of his ſhoulders full of winde, euen vppe to the withers: and hauing in this ſorte blowen vp the ſkinne from the fleſh, and thruſt out all the winde againe with my two handes, I then made two ruelles of the vpper leather of a ſhoe three inches broade, and hauing made them rounde, and cutte two holes in the middle thereof, I raiſed all the ſkinne from the fleſh rounde about the two foreſaide holes or ſlittes, and hauing put the ſaid two peeces of leather therein I charged all his ſhoulder with Pitch, Tarre, and Rozen molten togither, and let him ſtand ſtill with a paire of ſtraight paſturnes vppon his feete, and good ſtore of litter vnderneath him for the ſpace of one moneth: then I cauſed him to be led forth of the ſtable, and perceiuing him to go ſound, I put on his paſturns and let him ſtand in the ſtable three weekes more: and then hauing turned him to graſſe till hee was well pin-

ched

ched with the frost: he euer after went sound.

Of the wrench in the wyther ioint.

This commeth by treading his foote in some hole or in some rough or stonie waie: The signes to knowe it be these: The horse will halt, and his ioint will swell, so as you shall perceiue it to be bigger than the ioint of the other legge. The cure. Take heede you let no dogleaches let him bloud in the shackle veines, as I haue seene diuers of them doe, and striking him so often into the sinews and veines of the legge till they haue doubled his paines. The cure that I haue alwaies vsed is this. Take of blacke or gray Sope halfe a pound, and hauing made it hote in a panne, you shall take two or three good handfulles of of Towe, and dippe them in the Sope, you shall laie it hote to the horses ioint, and then hauing rolled all that ioint with a band of fiue foote long, and three inches broad, you shall let him stand one whole daie, and a night before you dresse him againe, and obserue this order euerie daie once till he be whole, and when you will roll your horse legge in this sorte, turne vp your roll rounde vppon a harde lump, as you see the Surgeons do: then shall you take the first end thereof, and put it vnder your foote, and hauing wrapped all the rest of the band about his legge, you may tie the two ends togither, so as you shall not wring your horses legge, I thought it good to teach you this much, for that I haue seene diuers Horseleaches, or rather Sowegelders, or butcherly tormentors that would laie a plaister with a clout vpon a horses legge, and afterwarde tie it so hard with a corde, that the medicine hath not done the horse halfe so much good as the corde hath done him harme: when I lacked Sope, I vsed Wine lees,

and wheate flowar, whereof I made a plaiſter, being warmed, which I haue found almoſt as good as the other.

Of the Collicke.

I Coulde neuer finde by experience anie horſe to haue this griefe, but when he did ſtand long idle in the ſtable, and I haue neuer vſed anie other cure than to trot him till hee was well warmed, which will cauſe him to breake winde, and remedie him till ſuch time as you let him reſt too long againe, which reſt is the woꝛſt thing that may be foꝛ a hoꝛſe that hath the Collick: the ſignes differeth nothing from the bottes, but that his bellie will ſwel verie big. And if you ſtirre him but a little, he will winde backeward verie much.

Of the Curbe.

THis happeneth to yong hoꝛſes by trauelling them too much, oꝛ by ſtraining them otherwiſe, and it is a little ſwelling beneath the elbow of his hough on his hinder legge: it commeth by meanes that the backe oꝛ maiſter ſinew is ſtrained and retched too long: the ſignes to knowe it be theſe: the ſwelling wil be apparant to the eie, oꝛ the legge vnder his hough will ſeeme as though it were crooked oꝛ bowed too muche backeward, and the farther he goeth the lamer ſhall he be. The cure: Take an yꝛon no thicker thã a litle ſtraw breadth, then ſhall you burne him therewith, euen from the vpper ende of the ſwelling vnto the neather end thereof right downe the middle, and then burne on ech ende of the foꝛeſaide ſtraike two other ſtraikes on the ſelfe maner, ſo as your ſtraikes may be no more

but

but halfe an inch one from another, and see that you burne him well, but not so much on the two sides as in the middle, then shall you charge him with Pitch, Rosen, and Tarre, molten together, and flockes put vpon the same, & let him stand in the stable for the space of three weeks or a moneth without stirring of him, and see that you laie litter inough vnder him for feare of sliding.

Of the wing-gall in the hinder iointes of a Horse.

I haue seene diuerse horses that with extreme trauaile would haue a soft swelling in ỹ inside of his hough, and it wil also goe through the hough, so as you may perceiue it on the out side of his hough, where if you thrust it or strike it but a little with your thumbe it wil be cleane gone, but it will come againe, and when you grope on the fore side of his ioynt with your fingers, you shall feele a great soft swelling: this commeth by meanes of extreame trauaile, and your horse to young, it needeth no other signes, for that you may easilie perceiue it by the prescription aboue mentioned. The cure. Take vp the two master vaines on the inside of his leg both aboue and beneath his hough, and hauing tied your vaine fast on the vpper side, let him bleede well from belowe, and hauing made fast his vaines with a wart thred, then shall you couer all his hough with a thicke plaister made of Allum lees and wheate flower mingled together, and roule it with a long roule, dresse him in this sort once a daie till he be whole. I haue neuer vsed anie other medicine then this for anie straine or swelling that might happen in my horses hough or hinder ioynt, but if your wing-gall will not awaie for all this which maye happen, if it be olde and of long continu-

ance, then shall you slit it from the neather side to the middle thereof, then having let the corruption out, you may heale vp the wound with the salue before recited in the Chapter of the splenting of the shulder, and when it is whole, it shall not be amisse to draw three or foure strekes with a hot yron downwardes with the haire, and to charge him therupon, as is declared in the Chapter going before, but I would not counsaile you to bee to busie in burning your horse for anie griefe that may otherwise be remedied, for the hot yron for some diseases or griefes is excellent, if it be vsed in time and place accordinglie, but if it be abused it is as hurtfull & dangerous, therefore I would not with you to suffer anie man to burne your horse, but such as be of approued experience and practise.

Of the horse that is cloied, pricked, or wrong with a naile.

The horse is said to be wrong, when as the naile is driuen so neere the quicke, that it wringeth the horse and causeth him to halt, you may draw out the naile and powre in a little hot burning Turpentine, if the griefe be new, this will cure him. The horse is cloied when the naile is driuen in the quicke, & so cleanched, in this sort you shall some perceiue by the high broching of the naile, or by striking a hammer vpon the cleanches thereof, then if it be new done, you haue neede to doe no more then to draw out the naile and powre in hot Turpentine as before, but if he halt as much when the naile is out, as he did before, then it shall bee good to take off the shoe and search the bottome of the sore, and make the hole some thing wide

then

then, that the humours may haue free passage downe-wards, for otherwise it will breake out aboue, and danger him to lose his hoofe, which shall not happen when the sore is wide inough at the first beginning. Hauing thus opened the hoofe and founde the bottome of the sore, yee shall stuffe it with fine Towe or Flare dipped in Turpentine, and hogges grease moulten together once a daie if the griefe bee newe, but if it bee olde, stinking, and full of corruption, it shall bee good to dresse him twice a daie till hee bee whole. Hauing thus dressed him, make his shoe hollowe, and tacke it on with foure or fiue nailes, and it shall bee good to fill all the sole of his foote with Towe dipped in the foresaide medicine, and to cut a sole of the ouer leather of a shoe for his foote, and make it fast with small sticks, cut them lyke splintes, and so that your shoe be made so hollowe that you may easilie dresse your horse without taking off the shoe at euerie time, and during this cure let him tread on no wet, but if the griefe burst out aboue the toppe of his hoofe, then it shall bee good to cut awaie the sole of his foote an inch broade alongst the side, so farre as you shall finde the horne lose from his foote, and to dresse him with spunge wet on the one side in the foresaide medicine, then shall you take two or three egges, yolkes and whites and all beaten together, and adde therevnto an ounce of bole Armoniacke, and as much Beane or Wheate meale as will thicken the same, make a plaister thereof two fingers broade, and as long as will goe rounde on the toppe of the horses hoofe, binde it fast with a roule, and renue it once a daie, but below dresse him twice a daie vntill hee be perfectlie whole. But if you chaunce at anie time to haue your horse through euill dressing so farre gone, that neither this binding charge aboue, nor the greate issue below will anie thing helpe him, but

but that his griefe remaineth all one, or rather waxeth worse and worse, then shal you perfectlie with a drawer begin to cut a slit euen at the top of the horne to the nether edge thereof cleane through to the quick at the one end of the lose place, then at the other end of the horne following from this slite, there shall you begin to cut another slit, in such sort as you may plucke the lose peece cleane awaie, then may you see whether there be prowde flesh, high grissell, or little wartes or buttons of vitious and vile flesh, then may you cut them awaie with a rasor, and laie on powder of burnt Allome, and a plaister made of the medicine before recited in the Chapter of the shoulder splent, and make a bote for him till he be whole, thus may you heale your horse of anie such griefe of false quarter perfectlie without anie danger, the false quarter is no other thing but a clift or open right euen from the top of the horses hoofe to the bottome thereof, and it will be so painfull, that it will cause the horse to halt, and it will bleede in the trauailing vpon harde ground, and needeth no other cure but, with a drawer to cut awaie the horne of each side thereof halfe an inch on euerie side of the slit, so as you may take awaie the horne an inch broad euen from the toppe thereof to the bottome, by this meanes the horne shall growe downe whole and sound, thou must dresse him as before, & put a bote vpon his foote.

Of a pricke in the sole of the foote with a channell naile, rustie yron, stub, or sharpe stone.

The cure. Open the mouth of the sore, and hauing searched the bottome with a quill, then powre in Turpentine and hogs grease together boiling hot, & put therin a little fine flaxe or cotton made of linnen clothes,

clothes dresse him in this sorte twice a daie, and in a peece of leather, as before, that the medicine fall not out.

Of the Horse that is grauelled.

THis commeth by reason that grauel getteth in vnder his shoe, and so fretteth the horne: the signes to knowe it be these: the horse will halt, and if you put your knife point betwixt his heele & the spring of his shoe, you shall straight perceiue the grauel which will crash vpon your knife. The cure. Take off his shoe, pare his foote, picke out the grauell, and mend the shoe, and set it on againe, and put therein a little Turpentine, sheepes Suet, and Ware molten together, and stuffe it well with a little Towe or Flaxe.

Of the Surbate.

THis seldome happeneth to a horse with a good hoofe, those that are flat footed are most subiect to this disease, it commeth by trauailing on hard wayes in the Summer time, or else by riding him vpon stonie and hard mountaines. The signes to knowe it bee these: the horse will halt much more vppon harde ground than vppon softe, I neuer had anie horse lame of this griefe but one, and that on one foote onlie, which horse I cured in this sorte: I roasted a couple of egges hard, & hauing first powred hot Sallet oile in my horses foote, I thrust the hot egges in also, and tyed them fast with a cloth ouer his foote, and letting him stande all night, I found him sound the next morning, and so continued all my iourney, which was aboue three score French leagues.

Of the rotten or matering frush.

THis commeth for lacke of paring and cleane kéeping of the foote. The ſignes to know it are theſe: the horſes frogge or frush will runne of filthie and ſtinking water. The cure. Take off the ſhoo and pare his foote well, if you will ſpare your labour and charges, you may laie anie other medicine vnto it, but I for my part neuer vſed anie other medicine than to pare my horſes foote, as hath béene aforeſaide, and to kéepe it cleane.

Of the mangineſſe in the taile and mane.

THis commeth commonlie by the meanes of duſt falling out of the racke, and for lacke of combing his mane, and for want of currying and rubbing him vnder his mane faſt by the rootes thereof. The cure. If it bée in the mane let him bloud on the necke, and cut awaie the haire a finger breadth cleane through the middle of his mane, euen from the wythers to the eares, ſo as on what ſide ſo euer you turne the mane no man can perceiue one haire thereof to bée cut, then ſhall you with a hotte yron ſo bigge as your little finger, burne all the place where you cut his haire euen from the one end to the other of his mane, then fill all that ſame burned place or furrowe full of blacke Sope, and if you would kéepe your horſe from itch, it ſhall not bée amiſſe when that you perceiue the haire to come again, to burne him as before, and this will cauſe his mane to be a great deale the finer, and thereby ſhall be the leſſe ſubiect to itch. If it be in the taile waſh him with ſtrong lie and Sope.

Of

Of the falling of the creast.

THis commeth most commonlie when a fat horse falleth leane by sickneſſe or trauaile, it néedeth no ſignes, for that you may eaſilie know it by meanes that the horſes creaſt will hang all on one ſide, it was my fortune to finde one of theſe horſes at Sir Henrie Cromwels in Huntington ſhéere. This was a blacke baie horſe in the Quéenes Stable, named baie Storie, he had turned him to graſſe for a Stallion, and hauing ſhewed him to me, and commended him for a meruailous readie and ſeruiceable horſe, with all he tolde mée that if I would venture to dreſſe him according to the order ſet downe by that famous Marſhall Martine Almon, that hée would venture his Horſe, for (quoth hée) as he is, I eſtéeme him nothing at all, but in fine he read me his booke, ſhewed me the figure, and I burnt the horſe accordinglie, but ſéeing him neuer a whit the better, but that in time I ſawe his creaſt beganne to ſattle downe as lowe as euer it did, I ſitting vppon the barre by him one daie, I ſet my left hande on his mane, and pulled ouer his creaſt on the right ſide, and then faſtning my right hande cloſe vppon the ſkinne at the fore edge of his ſhoulder, a foot and ſome thing more beneath his creaſt, and then letting my left hande goe, and helping my right hande alſo with my left to holde the foreſayd ſkinne, I therewith helde his creaſt ſo vpright as euer it did ſtand in all his life, by which triall I founde that if that ſkinne coulde be ſo ſhrinked and kept vppe ſhort, that it was the onelie waie to holde vppe his creaſt, but I founde that it was

waxed so great, for that it had béene fallen foure yéeres, that if I had set it vp by the foresayd meanes, that then it would fall on the other side. I deuised with my selfe a great manie of daies what were best to doe, and I euer carrying so obstinate a minde, that I disdayned to haue begunne anie thing which I shoulde not bée able to performe, at the length it came to my minde to dresse him as heere vnder followeth.

Hauing cast the horse vppon a softe dunghill, I with a long knife cut awaie the flesh on the hanging or vnder side of the creast, euen from the fore end thereof to the hinder end, fiue inches broad, and two inches thick, and something more in the middle thereof, where it was thickest, & groping the creast with my two handes where it was thicke, I cut and pared it so long, till I made it iust of one thicknesse, then holding the horse still fast bound, I couered all the place with great handfulls of Swines dung, which I caused to be holden fast with mens hands for the space of an houre, in which time the bloud was perfectlie staunched, then I let the horse rise, led him into the stable, and tied him in such sorte, that hée could neither rubbe his necke nor lie downe, and the next morning betimes I threwe good store of burnt Allome vppon all the sore place, and so I let him stande for the space of two dayes, neuer touching the wound for feare of making it bleede, and at the two dayes end, I faire and softly bathed the place with a lynnen cloth dipped in warme pisse, and then hauing dryed the sore, I threwe on burnt Allome beaten into fine pouder, and after I perceiued it to bée well fastned and thorough drie, I anointed him with Vnguentum album, round about the edges of the sore a quarter of an inch broade. In this sorte did I dresse him euerie daie once on that side of the creast that did fall, and howe I dressed the contrarie side hereafter followeth:

I did first plat or trace all his mane on the contrarie side, and then I made fast with strong thongs or points of leather, a cudgel of a foote and an halfe long, to the ends of the foresaid plattings of the mane, then I didde hang to the middle of the foresaide cudgell, a peece of lead with a hole in it, of such waight as did poise his creast, and holde it vpright in his due place, then did I burne long strikes, beginning at his creast, and ending euer almost as lowe as the point of his shoulder of the same side as the weight did hang, and they were no more but an inch and an halfe one from an other, and I burned them also well with an yron halfe an inch thicke, but whereas I made but five great strikes, if I had made twelue verie small ones, it had beene much better, bicause that when he had beene healed, it would not haue beene halfe so much seene. But to conclude: I charged the burnt places with Pitch, Tarre, and Rozen molten togither, and let my weight hang vntill he was throughly healed in both sides of his necke, with this I set vp his creast so stiffe that it is not possible to stirre it, neither to the one side nor to the other, but it will presently returne into his proper place againe, and so continue.

Of the vpper taint.

This is a swelling in the backe or maister sinew of the forelegge, and commeth by meanes that the horse striketh the sinew with the toe of his hinder foote, it needeth no signes for that you may easily perceiue it by the halting of your horse, and by the long swelling that will remaine vppon the forenamed sinew, you shall cure it perfectly by dressing him euerie daie once with a plaister made of Wine lees and wheat flowar, as haly beene before taught, or else you may

take blacke Sope and Woxes greaſe of each like quantitie, ſcalding hote, make a plaiſter thereof, ſo long and broad as the ſwelling, with theſe two laſt named medicines, I haue neuer failed to cure my horſe of any griefe in his legges, that commeth either by ſtraine or ſtroke, and if at any time you make your horſe go ſound with the foreſaid medicines, and that ſome ſwelling remaineth, or vile vitious ſore, that you can with no ſalue or medicine heale it, then ſhall you burne all his leg with long ſtrikes from the vpper part of the ſwelling vnto the neathermoſt parte thereof, drawing your ſtrikes downeward with the haire, which order you muſt obſerue in burning anie horſe, that you drawe your hand ſo neare as you can with the haire, and that you make the edge of your yron very thin, and burne your ſtrikes thicke, and alſo ſomewhat deepe, and after his burning annoint his leg with blacke Sope two or three times: but if it be a gelding, turne him to graſſe, wherewith you ſhall finde him perfectly cured within a ſhort ſpace, but if it be ſuch an horſe as you can not turne to graſſe, ſee that you exerciſe him euerie daie twice at the leaſt.

Of the paines, ſcratches, moulie heeles, or anie other ſcuruie ſcalles whatſoeuer, that may breede in a horſes legges or heeles, whether they come by meanes of euil humors, or for lacke of good dreſsing, or cleane keeping, whether they be matterie and filthie running ſores, or drie ſcabs, you ſhal cure them perfectly with this medicine.

TAke of Turpentine, Hogs greaſe, Honie, and blacke Sope, of ech like quantitie, and hauing molten them vpon a ſoft fire, take it off and put in a little bole Armoniacke finely beaten into powder, then worke all theſe things well togither with a ſticke in your right hand,

hand, and a diſh of wheate flowar by you, that with your left hand you may put it in a little at once til you haue made it thicke like an ointment or ſoft ſalue, then ſhall you make a plaiſter vpon canuas or linnen cloth, ſo bigge as the ſore, and hauing firſt cut away the haire applie your plaiſter, and dreſſe him in this ſort once a daie vntill he be whole.

Of the Fiſtula or anie hollow vlcer that may breede in anie part of your horſes bodie, either by euil curing of a wound, or by bruiſe, ſtroke, or wringing with an euil ſaddle vpon his wythers.

THis is an hollow filthie mattering vlcer, and moſt commonly a great deale ſtraiter at the mouth than within. The cure. Firſt ſearch the bottome therof with a Goſe or Swannes quill, or with a ſmall rod well couered with fine linnen cloth, and hauing found the bottom thereof, cut it ſo large with a razor, that the matter may haue free paſſage downeward, for otherwiſe it ſhall be hard to cure it, by reaſon that the matter ſtanding in the ſore ſhall fret the good fleſh, and make the wound daily greater. But take heede that in launcing it, you cut not anie maſter ſinew, for a ſinewe once cut will neuer growe togither againe: hauing ſtanched the bloud with Swines dung, you ſhall then take of honie one pinte, of Verdegreeſe one ounce, and boile theſe togither vpon a ſoft fire three quarters of an houre: then hauing cleanſed the wound or ſore, by tying a teint of flare or fine linnen cloth to the point of your quil, with a threede drawe it ſoftly into the wound, then cut off your quill or feather ſo long that you may take good holde in the neather end of the teint, that then ſhall come out at the bottome of your ſore: then dippe an other teint in the foreſaide ſalue or ointment, and

then

then with a nædle and a thrēede make fast your teint to your first clot at the vpper ende thereof, then draive out your first teint downeward, so shal you draw your teint with the medicine easily into the wound, and your first teint wil haue cleansed the sore very cleane: and if the matter do abound much, then it shall be good to dresse him twice a daie, but you must not dresse him with this medicine no more but one daie, and afterward you shal dresse him with this medicine folowing: Take of Turpentine and Swines grease, Honie, and sheeps Suet, of eche like quantitie, melt them togither, and make a salue thereof wherewith you shal dresse your horse foure daies for one daie that you dresse him with your former medicine made of Honie and Verdegrēese, and take heed that you make your teint of verie soft linnen cloth, or fine flaxe, and let not your teint be to bigge after the first two times dressing, but presently after the firste dressing ye must couer all the sore place, and rounde about the same with this pultis here following. First take two gallons of faire water, and hauing boiled and scūmed it so long til you haue perfectly cleansed it of al corruption, then take two or three handfulles of Mallowes, and as much of Violet leaues, and two or three handfulles of Date meale, and hauing boiled all these three things well in your former prepared water, you shall adde thereto of Hogs mort, and fresh Butter, of each a pound, then shall you let it boile so long till it become thicke like Paste or Pappe, and then applie it hote to the sore so as hath bēene before taught, and take great heede, that in opening this sore you let not anie one strike into it, and on the other side, that you keepe it not to hote: and if it be in the horses withers, you must take heede that you tie his head to the racke so as he may neither lie downe, nor put his head lower than his manger: for if you suffer him to feed on the ground,

when

when he hath anie greeuous ſore in his wythers, it ſhal hardly be poſſible euer to cure him. But if you perceiue the wound to heale a pace, and that it matter but a litle, then ſhall it be inough to dreſſe him once a daie, and alſo it ſhall be good to take great heede that you make not your teint to bigge, and ſee that you vſe your poultis till he be perfectly cured.

The ſixt booke of the Smith.

Of paring and ſhooing.

If the ſound and good foote: I cal that a ſound and good fot that is holow, round and vpright, ſo as the horſe may treade almoſt as high at his heele, as at the to, and alſo this hoofe is ſomething large at the heels, but yet vpright without turning togither, or without ſpreading abroad.

How to pare the good foote.

You ſhall pare it verie little at the heele, that is to ſaie, no more but to plaine the ſeate of your ſhoe, but forward towards the toe you may pare it ſomething more: alſo open his heeles well, and pare the ſole of his fot ſomething thinne, if it be in faire weather, but if in froſtie weather and ſtonie waies, you muſt trauell, it ſhall not be good to pare your horſe thinne vpon the ſole of his foote for feare of laming him, and if he ſhould chance to caſt a ſhoo, he ſhall not be able to ſet his foote to the ground.

How to make the ſhooefor the ſound hoofe.

FIrſt make it of ſuch yron as will not breake, and ſo light as is poſſible, ſo as it be ſtrong ynough to beare your horſe, and make it of a verie narrow webbe, and let it be ſomething broader in the toe than at the ſpunges or calcons: let it alſo be ſtrong in the toe, and round about, and round about the in edge: let it alſo be ſomething ſtrong in the two ſpunges or calcons, which calcons are the beſt kinde of ſhoing for a ſound and good hoofe: let the calcons alſo be but ſhort, and blunt at the points, for feare leaſt hee ſette one foote vpon an other: and ſee that you make it ful as ſtraight as the horne, ſo farre as the nailes goeth, and pierce the holes ſo far from the edge, that when you would driue your nailes, you may ſet them right in the middle of the holes, and take good holde, for by piercing them too neere the edge of your ſhoe, you ſhall be forced to make it fit within the horne: for if you would make it large inough, then ſhal you be forced to ſet your nailes ſo neere vpon the in edge of the hole, that thereby you ſhal cleaue off the outſide of your horſes horne, which a number of ignorant Smiths do little conſider, that they do vtterly ſpoile ẏ horſes hoofe thereby. But to the matter: you ſhall let your ſhoe from the two heele nailes backward lie the thicknes of your naile ſhanke without the horne, & giue this ſhoe 9. nailes, that is to ſay, foure on ech ſide, & one right in the middle of the toe, & let the ſpunges thereof ſit a ſtraw breadth behinde the corner of the offine, & let the heades of your nailes be ſo fit for ẏ holes that they may enter into the ſhoe, ſo as they may not ſtand aboue halfe a ſtrawe breadth higher: for if the heades be high, and the holes ſtrait on the outſide, then ſhal they ſome breake off, or elſe turne aſide, and thereby breake the clauſe, the head of the naile, and the hole would be made in ſuch ſorte, that when you drive

your

your naile in the shoe, you shall not be able to get it out againe: yea I would not wish you to let any such ore shoers, shoe your horse, as to lose their nailes, and worke the holes of their shoes so wide on the inside as on the outside: for in the true knowledge of shoeing I am sure it is required to make the holes so wide on the outside, as the head may iustly enter into the same, and on the inside so strait, as the shanke of the naile or necke may haue no libertie to moue to or fro. Also take heed that you hollow your shoe verie little.

Of paring and shooing the hinder foote.

IN paring the hinder foote, cut but a verie little of the toe: also make your shoe a little stronger at the toe than behinde, and take heede that you driue not any naile in the toe of the hinder foote, nor take so much and so deep hold with your nailes, as that the heele for the chiefe strength of the hinder foote is at the heeles, and of the forefoote in the toe.

Of the splay or crooked foote.

THe horse is saide to be splaid or croked when the one side is higher than the other, so as the horse seemeth to be a great deale larger on the one side than on the other. But it is much worse whē it is higher on the outside than on the inside: for therby it shal make the horse tread inward, & strike the one leg against the other, & lame himself: the remedie is to pare his larger side wel, and pare nothing on the other side, but onelie to euen the side of your shoe.

How to pare and shooe the flat foote.

THe foote is said to be flat when it is so high in the middle as on the outside, you shall pare it as litle as is possible at the heeles, you may part it well at the toe, and on the sole verie little, holowe your shoe well,

make it with a broad web ſtrong about the in edge, and at the ſpunges, & take heede that you make no calcons for anie horſe that hath a weake or ſtraight foote, and let it lie at the heeles without the horne, and rounde about full as long as the foot, and it will be good to pierce your holes ſomewhat farther from the edge, than you do for him that hath a perfect foote.

How to ſhoe a horſe that ouer-reacheth.

MAke his ſhoe no longer before than the heele of his horne doth of neceſſitie require, and at the toe end of the hinder foote, ſet your ſhoe a full quarter of an inch ſhorter than the horne, which horne you muſt not cut, but let it hang ouer the ſhoe: this is the perfecteſt waie or remedie that euer I could find for him that ouer-reacheth.

For the horſe that enterfeers.

THis commeth vndoubtedly through weakeneſſe of bodie, for that he is ridden too yong. The beſt remedie that euer I coulde finde is to pare the foote on the out ſide, and alſo to breake off the calcon on the outſide of the ſhoe, and to leaue it a litle thicker on the inſide than on the outſide. Alſo you muſt cauſe the ſhoe to be made to lie within the horne, from the heele naile to the formoſt naile on the inſide, but at the heele let it lie ſomething without the horne, as well on the inſide as on the outſide: for otherwiſe the ſpunge ſhall ſincke into his heele, and ſo conſume the ſame, that it ſhall be lower than the outſide, ſo that the ſhoe by conſuming the heele on the one ſide, and the Smith paring him on the other ſide, ſhall cleane marre your horſes foote.

For

For an horſe that hath an euill hoofe.

LEt your horſe ſtand vpon his owne dung, and throw water vpon it good ſtore, and euerie night take it awaie till the next morning that he be dreſt: this is verie good to recouer a horſe hoſe that is euill through the negligence of his keeper, but if ſo be your horſes hoſe be reaſonable good, and that you would keepe the ſame and make it ſoft and tough, then annoint it euerie daie once with Turpentine, Hogs greaſe and Honie, and of each like quantitie molten together.

For the horſe that hath naturallie an euill hoofe, or hath bene foundred, by meanes whereof his hoofe is ſo marred that he is not able to carrie a ſhooe.

FIrſt ſhoe him in the new of the Moone with high ſhoes, vpon the ſecond or third daie after ỳ change, then make him a paire of bootes in this ſort: firſt cut a peece of ſtrong leather a finger breadth larger then the horſes foot, which is beſt done by laying the horſe ſhoe vpon the leather, then ſhall you cut ſo much of the legge of an olde boote as will goe about the forenamed ſole, then cloſe it faſt round about vpon the edge of your ſole, and let it be fiue inches long, and as wide aboue as beloive, then put it on the horſes foote and marke it round about an inch aboue the horſes hoſe, thē take it off againe and cut it full of long ſlits, ſo as you may paſſe a peece of leather of an inch broad with a buckle vpon the ſame, that you may make it faſt vpon the horſe foot, then ſhall you take Turpentine, Hogs greaſe, and Honnie, of each a like quantitie, melt them all together, and being warme, anoint the horſe foot therwith, then ſhall you dip a cloth therein, with the which you muſt ſtop the horſes foote before you put on his boote, it

X 60727

shall be verie good to lap a peece of soft cotton round about the toppe of the horses foote, being first dipt in the foresaid mediane. This shal not onelie defend your horses foote from galding with the girdle or bote, but the warmnesse of the cloth shal wonderfullie cause the horse foote to increase, it shall be good to take off his bote euerie two daies once, and to let him stand foure houres at the least before you dresse him, and put on his bote to the end he may rest his foote.

FINIS.

IMPRINTED AT
London by Thomas East
for Thomas Cadman, dwelling in Paules Churchyard at the signe of the Bible.

1585.

John brooks

William

Tare

cat
29 Ja 18
M

x 60727